

INDEX

- Aachen, 356, 430, 432, 433, 440, 441, 447, 458; *and see* Albert of Aix
- Abagha, son of Hulagu; Il-khan of Persia 1265-1282: 575, 576, 580, 582, 586, 654, 722, 751, 762
- ‘Abbāsids, Arab caliphal dynasty at Baghdad 749-1258: 17, 27 note, 34, 571, 662, 665, 671, 717, 735, 736, 742, 746, *and see* al-Qā’im 1031-1075, al-Mustarshid 1118-1135, al-Mustaḍī 1170-1180, an-Nāṣir 1180-1225, al-Musta’ṣim 1242-1258; at Cairo 1261-1519: 747, 756, 757, *and see* al-Mustanṣir 1261-1261, al-Ḥākim 1262-1302
- ‘Abd-al-Mu’min, Muwaḥḥid caliph 1130-1163: 28, 30-32
- ‘Abd-al-Qādir Gilānī, Persian mystic (d. 1166), 663
- Abenberg, count of, *see* Frederick
- Abigharib (Abū-l-Gharīb), son of Hasan; Armenian lord of Bira (to 1117), 632-634, 636
- Abū-Bakr, Naṣrat-ad-Dīn, grandson of Ildegiz; atabeg of Azerbaijan 1191-1210: 670
- Abū-l-Ḥasan, shaikh at Damietta, 419
- Abū-Sa’id, son of Ōljaitu; Il-khan of Persia 1316-1335: 722
- Abū-Shāmah, Arabic chronicler (d. 1268), 392, 393
- Abydus, 103, 108, 177
- Abyssinia, 669
- Acarmania, 13, 226, 235, 263, 267, 273
- Acerra, count of, *see* Thomas of Aquino
- Achaea, bailies of, *see* Hugh of Champlitte, John Chauderon, Galeran of Ivry, Philip of Lagonesse, Guy of Dramelay, William de la Roche, Nicholas II of St. Omer, Guy de Charpigny, Richard Orsini, Nicholas III of St. Omer, Guy II de la Roche, Bertino Visconti, Thomas of Marzano; barons of, 255, 264, 265, 267, 269; parliament of, 248; princes of, *see* William I of Champlitte 1205-1209, Geoffrey I of Villehardouin 1209-c. 1229, Geoffrey II of Villehardouin c. 1229-1246, William II of Villehardouin 1246-1278, Charles I of Anjou 1278-1285, Charles II 1285-1289, Florent of Hainault 1289-1297, Philip of Savoy 1301-1306, Philip of Taranto 1306-1313, Louis of Burgundy 1313-1316; princesses of, *see* Isabel of Villehardouin 1289-1306, Mahaut 1313-1318; principality of, 207, 213, 238-240, 242 note, 243, 245, 248, 249, 255, 256, 258-269, 272-274, 367, 760, 762; regent of, *see* Anna Angelina Comnena 1259-1261; *see also* Morea
- Acharie of Sermin (Sarmin), seneschal of Antioch, 538
- Achyraūs, 209
- Acre: under Saladin 1187-1191: 39 note, 40, 41, 46, 51-54, 61, 63-69, 75, 115, 116, 339, 600 note, 601, 646, 759; under Franks 1191-1210: 69-73, 77, 78, 80-85, 120, 121, 158 note, 161, 522-524, 529-532, 604, 647, 759; 1210-1225: 379, 381, 382, 388-396, 402, 416, 419, 422, 427, 437, 440, 536-538, 605, 609, 610 note, 698, 760; 1225-1243: 222, 442, 448, 449, 451, 454, 459, 460, 463, 469, 471-474, 477, 478, 481, 483, 484, 489, 542-554, 612, 613, 626, 701, 702, 761; 1243-1268: 230, 245, 491, 494, 504, 505, 507-509, 554, 559, 561, 562, 565-576, 606, 613, 614, 615 note, 709, 741, 742, 745; 1268-1291: 518, 579, 580, 582-586, 588-590, 592-598, 608, 616-618, 624, 655, 753, 754, 762; bay of, 596, 597; bishops of, 381, 389, 536, 538; high court of, *see* under Jerusalem, kingdom
- Acrocorinth, 14, 240, 241, 248
- Acropolis, at Athens, 241, 248, 272
- Acropolites, George, Byzantine historian (d. 1282), 204, 210
- Adalbert III, count of Dillingen 1185-1198: 92, 93
- Adalia, 133, 681, 682, 692, 730
- Adam of Gaston (Baghrās), regent of Armenia 1219-1221: 540
- Adana, 540, 635-637, 642, 644, 651 note, 654, 657
- Adela, sister of Henry I of Champagne; 3rd wife of Louis VII of France 1160-1180; regent 1190-1191 (d. 1206), 54, 70
- Adelaide of Montferrat, wife of Roger I of Sicily 1090-1101, regent 1101-1112, 3rd wife of Baldwin I of Jerusalem 1113-1116 (d. 1118), 5, 7, 18, 19 note
- al-‘Adil Abū-Bakr I, Saif-ad-Dīn (“Saphadin”), brother of Saladin; Aiyūbid governor of the Jazīra 1186-1193: 77, 78, 693; ruler 1193-1198: 117, 526, 529, 694, 695; ruler of Damascus 1198-1200: 121, 530, 608, 695; Sultan of Egypt and Syria 1200-1218: 161 note, 169, 531-533, 536, 537,

- 683, 696-699, 737, 759, 760; and fifth crusade, 389-391, 398, 401, 407, 409, 449, 539, 698, 699; daughter of, 113 note
- al-ʿĀdil Abū-Bakr II, Saif-ad-Dīn, son of al-Kāmil Muḥammad; Aiyūbid sultan of Egypt 1238-1240 (d. 1247), 465, 471, 473, 475, 478, 480, 551, 674, 705-707, 737; son of, 712
- ʿĀdilī mamluks, 737
- al-ʿĀdilīyah, town, 398, 405, 408-410
- Admont, abbot of, 92
- Adolf (of Altena), archbishop of Cologne 1193-1205 (d. 1220), 117
- Adolf III, son of Engelbert I; count of Berg 1189-1218: 399
- Adolf III, count of Schaumburg and Holstein 1164-1203 (d. 1205), 92, 115, 121
- Adramyttium, 192, 209
- Adrianople, 190, 191, 203-205, 215, 217; third crusade at, 104-111, 113, 148
- Adriatic Sea, 173, 206, 208, 212, 609; coasts of, 13, 29, 175, 191; ports on, 3, 10, 388; region of, 14, 127
- Aegean Sea, 177, 191, 205, 209, 238, 254, 257, 729; dukes of, *see* Archipelago; islands in, 191, 193; map of, 152
- Aegina, 191; bishopric of, 252; lord of, 271
- Aetolia, 235, 273
- Afāriqah, Christians of Tunisia, 27 note
- al-Afḍal ʿAlī, Nūr-ad-Dīn, son of Saladin; Aiyūbid governor of Damascus 1186-1193, ruler 1193-1196, regent of Egypt 1198-1200, lord of Samosata 1203-1225: 683, 693, 695, 696, 698, 699
- Africa, *see* North Africa, Tunisia
- Agathopolis, 191
- Agen, 319; bishop of, 295
- Agenais, 287 note, 294, 295, 303, 304, 306, 315, 320, 322
- Aghlabids, Arab dynasty in Tunisia 800-909: 17
- Agnes (of Andechs), daughter of Berthold IV of Meran; 3rd wife of Philip II of France 1196-1200 (d. 1201), 388 note
- Agnes ("Anna") of Châtillon, daughter of Reginald and Constance; 1st wife of Bela III of Hungary 1172-1184: 139
- Agnes of Courtenay, daughter of Latin emperor Peter and Yolanda; wife of Geoffrey II of Achaëa 1217-1246 (d. 1247), 213, 242-244
- Agnes ("Anna") of France, daughter of Louis VII and Adela; wife of Alexius II Comnenus 1180-1183, wife of Andronicus I Comnenus 1183-1185, wife of Theodore Branas after 1205 (d. 1220), 134, 141, 145, 204, 244
- Agnes of Montferrat, daughter of Boniface (II) of Thessalonica; 1st wife of Latin emperor Henry 1207-c. 1210: 205, 210
- Agriidi, 760; battle (1232), 631, 761
- Ahasi, 21
- Ahil, 192
- Aḥmad al-Badawī, Moroccan shaikh, 711
- Aiello (Calabro), count of, 41 note
- Aigues-Mortes, 493, 511, 515
- Aimard, Templar, 383, 386
- Aimery, lord of Montréal (d. 1211), 293
- Aimery III, viscount of Narbonne 1194-1236: 303
- Aimery of Limoges, Latin patriarch of Antioch 1139-1196?: 527
- Aimery of Lusignan, son of Hugh VIII; constable of Jerusalem 1181-1194: 45, 48, 50, 65; count of Jaffa 1193-1194: 525; ruler of Cyprus 1194-1197: 42, 82, 118-120, 149, 525, 528, 604, 622, 624, 647, 759; king 1197-1205: 121, 529-532, 559, 604, 605, 610, 616, 619-623, 759; king of Jerusalem 1197-1205: 82, 121, 530-536, 543, 604, 608, 611, 650, 759, 760; son of (by Isabel), *see* Amalric; wives of, *see* Eschiva of Ibelin, Isabel (of Jerusalem)
- Aimery of Péguilhan, troubadour (d. c. 1255), 382
- Aimo, bishop of Mâcon 1228-1242: 467
- ʿAin Jālūt, 390; battle (1260), 574, 575, 653, 674, 714, 718, 722, 745, 761
- ʿAin-ad-Daulah, son of Malik-Ghāzī; Dānishmendid emir at Melitene 1140-1152: 638
- ʿĀʾishah Khātūn, daughter of al-ʿAzīz Muḥammad of Aleppo; wife of al-Manṣūr Muḥammad II (after 1247), 711
- Aix, *see* Aachen; *see also* Albert
- Aiyūbids, Kurdish dynasty, xviii, 422, 449, 465, 471, 481, 489, 505, 522, 528, 530, 531, 543, 546, 561, 564, 608, 673, 693-714, 717, 719, 735-737, 740, 742, 743, 745-748, 759, 761; sultans of Egypt 1174-1252: 297, 560, 567, 694, 712, 757, 758, *and see* Saladin 1174-1193, al-ʿAzīz ʿUthmān 1193-1198, al-Manṣūr Muḥammad 1198-1200, al-ʿĀdil (Abū-Bakr I) Saif-ad-Dīn 1200-1218, al-Kāmil Muḥammad 1218-1238, al-ʿĀdil Abū-Bakr II 1238-1240, aṣ-Ṣāliḥ Aiyūb 1240-1249, (al-Muʿazzam) Tūrān-Shāh 1249-1250, al-Ashraf Mūsā 1250-1252; rulers of Damascus 1174-1260: 448, 560, 674, 694, *and see* Saladin 1174-1193, al-Afḍal ʿAlī 1193-1196, al-ʿAzīz ʿUthmān 1196-1198, al-ʿĀdil (Abū-Bakr I) Saif-ad-Dīn 1198-1218, al-Muʿazzam ʿIsā 1218-1227, an-Nāṣir Dāʾūd 1227-1229, al-Ashraf Mūsā 1229-1237, aṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ismāʿīl 1237-1237, 1239-1245, al-Kāmil Muḥammad 1237-1238, al-Jauwād Yūnus 1238-1238, aṣ-Ṣāliḥ Aiyūb 1238-1239, 1245-1249, (al-Muʿazzam) Tūrān-Shāh 1249-1250, an-Nāṣir Yūṣuf 1250-1260; rulers of Aleppo 1183-1260: 526, 540, 674, 694, 714, 727, *and see* Saladin 1183-1193, aṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ghāzī 1193-1216, al-ʿAzīz Muḥammad 1216-1236, an-Nāṣir Yūṣuf 1236-1260; rulers of the Jazīra (at Maiyafariqin) 1185-1260: 665, 672, 673, 683, 694, *and see* Saladin 1185-1193, al-ʿĀdil (Abū-

- Bakr I) Saif-ad-Dīn 1193-1198, al-Auḥad Aiyūb 1198-1202, al-Ashraf Mūsā 1202-1229, al-Muẓaffar Ghāzī 1229-1244; rulers of Homs 1174-1263: 694, 714, *and see* Saladin 1174-1193, al-Mujāhid Shīrkūh 1193-1240, al-Manṣūr Ibrāhīm 1240-1246, al-Ashraf Mūsā 1246-1263; rulers of Hamah 1174-1341: 694, 714, 743, *and see* Saladin 1174-1193, al-Manṣūr Muḥammad I 1193-1221, an-Nāṣir Kilij Arslan 1221-1229, al-Muẓaffar Maḥmūd 1229-1243, al-Manṣūr Muḥammad II 1243-1284; rulers of Baalbek 1174-1260: *see* Saladin 1174-1193, al-Amjad Bahrām-Shāh 1193-1230, al-Ashraf Mūsā 1230-1237, as-Ṣāliḥ Ismā'īl 1237-1246, as-Ṣāliḥ Aiyūb 1246-1249, (al-Mu'aẓẓam) Tūrān-Shāh 1249-1250, an-Nāṣir Yūsuf 1250-1260; rulers of Transjordan (at Kerak) 1188-1263: 714, *and see* Saladin 1188-1193, al-Mu'aẓẓam 'Isā 1193-1227, an-Nāṣir Dā'ūd 1227-1249, al-Mughīth 'Umar 1250-1263; rulers of Ḥiṣn Kaifā 1232-1534: 693 note, *and see* as-Ṣāliḥ Aiyūb 1232-1239; rulers of Yemen 1174-1229: 693 note, *and see* Saladin 1174-1193, al-Mas'ūd Yūsuf 1215-1229; *see also* al-'Azīz Muḥammad, al-'Azīz 'Uthmān, al-Fā'iz Ibrāhīm, Farrūkh-Shāh Dā'ūd, al-Ḥāfiẓ Arslan, Khalīl, al-Mughīth 'Umar, al-Muẓaffar 'Umar, (al-Manṣūr) Shīrkūh, (al-Mu'aẓẓam) Tūrān-Shāh, and 'Ā'ishah Khātūn, Ḍaifah Khātūn
- 'Ajlūn, 390, 714
- Ak-Tai, Mamluk general (d. 1254), 713, 739-743
- Akhi* (Turkish, brotherhood), 688, 725, 729, 731, 732
- Akhlāt, 665, 672, 673, 683, 684, 696, 700-704, 708, 748; rulers of, 402, 663, 664, *and see* Aiyūbids (of the Jazīra)
- 'Akkār, 534, 558, 576, 581, 749, *and see* Isabel of Gibelcar
- Akrostikon* (Greek, land tax), 197
- 'Alā'-al-Mulk, 'Alid anti-caliph (c. 1218), 671
- 'Alam-ad-Dīn al-Ḥalabī, governor of Damascus (to 1261), 746
- Alamannia: "emperor of", 104; "king of", 103; *see also* Germany
- Alamut, 665, 717, 761
- Alan, archdeacon of Lydda (to 1196), Latin archbishop of Nicosia 1196-c. 1205: 624
- Alan of Roucy, lord of Termes, 294 note, 310
- 'Alāyā, 682
- Alba, county of, 268
- Albania, 191, 212, 217, 227, 235, 236; Angevins in, 256-258, 260, 261, 263, 273, 367, 368; people of, 228
- Albano (Laziale), 761; cardinal-bishops of, *see* Henry, Pelagius
- Albert (Rezzato), bishop of Brescia 1213-1226, Latin patriarch of Antioch 1226-1245: 421, 566
- Albert (Avogadro), patriarch of Jerusalem 1205-1213: 536
- Albert of Aix (Aachen), German chronicler (d. after 1120), 633
- Albert of Parma, papal notary, 360
- Albert Pallavicini, marquis of Bodonitsa (d. 1311), 271
- Albertino of Canossa, co-lord of Thebes, 238, 241
- Albi, 288
- Albigensian crusade (1209-1229), 277-324, 326, 327, 330, 333, 347, 349, 378, 381, 383, 439, 466, 470, 760, 761
- Albigensian heresy, heretics, xvii, 279-291, 293, 294, 297, 298, 301, 303, 304, 307, 308, 311, 312, 316, 322-324, 327, 343-346, 379
- Albigeois, 304, 312, 315, 320; lord of, 288
- Albistan, battle (1277), 728, 750, 751, 762
- Alcácer do Sal, 395
- Alençon, *see* John
- Aleppo, 576, 675, 684, 696-699, 704, 705, 707, 710, 711, 754; atabegs of, 662, 698; attacks on, 547, 550, 708; emirs of, 657, 746 note; merchants of, 590; Mongols at, 571, 572, 575, 582, 653, 654, 714, 717, 744, 751, 755, 761; rulers of, *see* Aiyūbids (1183-1260); troops from, 533, 550, 674, 697, 699-703, 705, 708, 710; Venetians at, 698
- Alexander III (Orlando de' Bandinelli), pope 1159-1181: 137, 141, 345, 346
- Alexander IV (Reginald de' Conti de Segni), nephew of Gregory IX; pope 1254-1261: 228, 361-363, 373, 569, 570, 572, 623, 628, 761
- Alexander of Siebenbürgen, provost of Hungary, 387
- Alexandria, 747, 748, 757, 761; attacks on, 30, 34 note, 35, 471, 495, 497; emir at, 337; merchants at, 697, 698; patriarchate of, 196; trade with, 161, 336, 339, 593
- Alexiad*, 127, 128; *see also* Anna Comnena
- Alexius III Angelus, brother of Isaac II; Byzantine emperor 1195-1203: 118, 148-150, 155, 162, 205, 529, 604, 648, 649, 759; and Henry VI, 42, 119, 149; and fourth crusade, 150, 166, 169, 171, 173, 176-179, 608, 760; after 1203: 151, 181, 201, 209; wife of, *see* Euphrosyne Ducaena
- Alexius IV Angelus, son of Isaac II; Byzantine co-emperor 1203-1204: 150, 151, 166, 168-174, 176-182, 189, 190, 760
- Alexius Axouch, Byzantine duke at Mamistra, 641
- Alexius Branas, Byzantine general (d. 1186), 147
- Alexius I Comnenus, Byzantine emperor 1081-1118: 5, 123-132, 135, 138, 142, 161, 165, 185, 632, 677; and first crusade, 126, 134; wife of, *see* Irene Ducaena

- Alexius II Comnenus, son of Manuel I and Maria; Byzantine emperor 1180-1183, co-emperor 1183-1183: 134, 137, 139, 141, 144, 145, 204; wife of, *see* Agnes of France
- Alexius Comnenus, nephew of Manuel I; Byzantine pretender 1184-1186: 36
- Alexius Comnenus, grandson of Andronicus I; emperor of Trebizond 1204-1222: 200, 760
- Alexius V Ducas ("Mourtzouphlus"), Byzantine emperor 1204-1204: 150, 151, 181, 182, 184, 201, 202; wife of, *see* Eudocia Angelina
- Alexius Philes, Byzantine official, 254
- Alexius Sebastus, Byzantine prince, 99, 101
- Alexius Strategopoulus, Byzantine caesar, 230-232
- Alfonso X ("the Wise" or "the Learned"), son of Ferdinand III; king of Castile 1252-1284, co-emperor (Holy Roman) 1257-1273: 229, 751
- Algeria, 17, 19, 28, 30, 31
- ʿAlī, al-Mansūr Nūr-ad-Dīn, son of Aybeg; Mamluk sultan of Egypt 1257-1259: 744, 761
- ʿAlī, aṣ-Ṣāliḥ, son of Kalavun (d. before 1290), 753
- ʿAlī, son-in-law of Mohammed; caliph at Kufa 656-661: 671
- ʿAlī, son of Yaḥyā; Zirid emir at Mahdia 1116-1121: 20
- ʿAlī ibn Yūsuf, Murābiṭ ruler in Morocco and Spain 1106-1143: 20
- Alice, daughter of Henry II of Champagne and Isabel of Jerusalem; wife of Hugh I of Cyprus 1208-1218: 605; 1st wife of Bohemond V of Antioch 1225-1228: 544; wife of Ralph of Nesle 1241-1246: 474, 485, 553; regent of Cyprus 1218-1232: 425, 544, 547, 605, 611, 623, 625; regent of Jerusalem 1243-1246: 559, 580, 606, 613
- Alice, daughter of Louis VII of France, 48, 49, 61
- Alice, daughter of Ṣoupen III; wife of Heṭoum of Sasoun 1189-1194, wife of Raymond of Antioch 1195-1197, wife of Ḥahram after 1221 (d. 1236), 527, 533, 540, 646, 651 note
- Alice (Plantagenet), niece of Arthur of Brittany; 1st wife of Peter of Dreux 1213-1221: 470
- Alice de la Roche, daughter of Guy I of Athens; wife of John II of Ibelin (to 1264), 269
- Alice of Montferrat, daughter of William IV; 1st wife of Henry I of Cyprus 1229-1233: 460
- Alice of Montmorency, sister of Matthew II; wife of Simon IV of Montfort 1191-1218 (d. 1221), 290, 311, 312
- Almohads, *see* Muwahhids
- Almoravids, *see* Murābiṭs
- Alpheus river, 253, 258, 264, 266, 272
- Alphonse, son of Louis VIII of France; count of Poitiers 1241-1271: 320, 492, 496, 497, 505, 508, 510, 511, 515; wife of, *see* Joan (of Toulouse)
- Alps, 118, 189 note, 333-335, 366, 450
- Alsace, 164, 433, *and see* Margaret, Philip Altenburg, count of, 50, 115
- Amadeo V, count of Savoy 1285-1323: 265
- Amalfi, 6, 155 note; merchants from, 27 note, 622 note
- Amalric, son of Fulk; king of Jerusalem 1163-1174: 34, 35, 65, 140, 164, 547, 619, 641, 643; wife of, *see* Maria Comnena
- Amalric Barlais, Cypriote baron, imperial bailie (with 4 associates) 1229-1230: 610, 612, 613
- Amalric of Lusignan, son of Aimery and Isabel (d. c. 1206), 532
- Amalric "of Lusignan", son of Hugh III; bailie of Jerusalem 1289-1291, regent of Cyprus 1306-1310: 592-597, 656; wife of, *see* Isabel (Hetoumid)
- Amalric VI of Montfort, son of Simon IV; count of Montfort and duke of Narbonne 1218-1241, earl of Leicester 1218-1239, constable of France 1230-1241: in Languedoc, 308, 309, 314, 315, 470; and crusade of 1239: 465, 466, 469, 470, 475, 476, 480, 482
- Amanian (of Grisinac), archbishop of Auch 1226-1242: 323
- Amanus Gates, pass, 654
- Amanus mountains, 576-578, 635, 636, 650; castles of, 640, 642, 643, *and see* Baghrās, Darbsāk
- Amayk, 637 note
- Amédée Pofey (Amadeo Buffa), constable of Thessalonica (d. 1210), 206-208, 238
- Amicie of Montfort, daughter of Simon IV (d. 1253), 290
- Amida, 684, 703, 704, 706, 708, 748; lords of, 683, 699
- Amiens, *see* Peter
- ʿAmīl (Arabic, official), 22, 26, 30, 31
- al-Amjad Bahrām-Shāh, Majd-ad-Dīn, son of Farrūkh-Shāh Dāʿūd; Aiyūbid governor of Baalbek 1183-1193, ruler 1193-1230 (d. 1231), 693, 701
- Amoudain, 638, 650
- Ana, 708
- Anacletus II (Peter of Leon, "Pierleone"), anti-pope 1130-1138: 7, 8 note
- Anagni, 374, 375, 461, 628
- Anamur, fortress, plate 1B
- Anaphe, 239
- Anatolia, 144, 664, 666, 673, 688, 704, 722, 735, 759; Byzantines and, 125, 127, 132, 133, 140, 141, 676-679; coast of, 600; Mongols in, 652, 653, 690-692, 708, 717, 719, 724-732, 750; third crusade in, 114, 680, 682, 759; Turkomans in, 643, 653, 676, 680, 685-691; Turks of, *see* Sel-

- chükids of Rüm, Dānismendids; *see also* Asia Minor
- ‘Anaz, 532
- Anazarba, 635–638, 641
- Ancona, 96, 168, 218; march of, 346, 355, 358, 359
- Andravida, 237, 249, 252, 258, 265
- Andreas, Cape, 600
- Andres, monastery, 331
- Andrew, Dominican friar, 626
- Andrew II, son of Bela III and Agnes; king of Hungary 1205–1235: 210, 213, 386–388, 391–394, 538, 609, 651 note, 760; wives of, *see* Gertrude (of Andechs), Yolanda of Courtenay
- Andrew, son of Andrew II of Hungary and Gertrude (d. 1234), 387, 393, 651 note
- Andrew, lord of Vitré, 469
- Andrew Ghisi, co-lord of Tenos 1207–1259: 238
- Andrew of Brienne, brother of count Erard; lord of Ramerupt (d. 1189), 50, 52
- Andrew of Chauvigny, Poitevin baron, 58
- Andrew of Nanteuil, brother of bishop Milo of Beauvais; French crusader, 415
- Andronicus I Comnenus, grandson of Alexius I; before 1182: 145, 639; Byzantine regent 1182–1183, co-emperor 1183–1183, emperor 1183–1185: 36, 62, 139, 145, 146, 164, 204, 600, 644; and Saladin, 37, 146, 148; grandsons of, 200; wife of, *see* Agnes of France
- Andronicus Euphorbenus, governor of Tarsus (to 1162), 641
- Andronicus II Palaeologus, son of Michael VIII, 255; Byzantine emperor 1282–1328 (d. 1332), 261, 262, 264, 265, 267, 270, 593, 657, 751, 762; wife of, *see* Yolanda of Montferrat
- Andros, 177, 191, 236, 238; bishopric of, 252
- Angarion* (Greek, corvée), 622, 624
- Angelo Ferro, brother of John; Venetian merchant, 225
- Angelo Sanudo, son of Marco I; duke of the Archipelago c. 1227–1262: 219, 242, 272; wife of, 232
- Angelus, Byzantine imperial dynasty at Constantinople 1185–1204: 146–151, 681, *and see* Isaac II 1185–1195, Alexius III 1195–1203, Isaac II and Alexius IV 1203–1204; *see also* Anna, Eudocia, Irene (2), Theodora Angelina
- Angelus “Comnenus”, Byzantine dynasty in Epirus 1204–1461: *see* Michael I “Ducas” 1204–1214, Theodore 1214–1230, Michael II 1236–1271, Nicephorus 1271–1296, Thomas 1296–1318; at Thessalonica 1224–1246: *see* Theodore 1224–1230, Manuel 1230–1236, John 1236–1244, Demetrius 1244–1246; at Neopatras 1271–1318: *see* John I 1271–1295, John II 1303–1318; *see also* Anna, Helena (2), Irene Angelina “Comnena”
- Angers, bishop of, *see* William
- Angevins, French dynasty in Sicily 1268–1282 and Naples 1265–1442: 256, 267, 268, 270, 273, 274, 370, 372, 509, 617, 762, *and see* Charles I 1268–1285, Charles II 1285–1309, Philip of Anjou, Philip I of Taranto, Charles of Taranto; *see also* Plantagenets
- Angoulême, *see* Peter
- Ani, 664, *and see* Samuel; king of, 630
- Anjou, 372, *and see* Charles, Philip; crusaders from, 56, 74; house of, 49, *and see* Plantagenets, Angevins; livres of, 192; lord of, 48; pennies of, 60
- Ankara, lord of, 677, 678
- Anna Angelina, daughter of Alexius III; wife of Isaac Comnenus (to 1195), 1st wife of Theodore I Lascaris (after 1199), 201
- Anna Angelina Comnena, daughter of Michael II of Epirus; 3rd wife of William II of Achaëa 1259–1278, 2nd wife of Nicholas II of St. Omer 1280–1284; regent of Achaëa 1259–1261: 246, 247, 261
- Anna Cantacuzena (Palaeologina), niece of Michael VIII Palaeologus; 2nd wife of Nicephorus of Epirus 1272–1296, despoina (after 1296), 266, 267
- Anna Comnena, daughter of Alexius I; Byzantine historian (d. after 1148), 125, 633
- Anna Dalassena, mother of Alexius I Comnenus (d. after 1095), 125, 128
- Anno of Sangerhausen, master of the Teutonic Knights 1257–1274: 573, 574
- Ansbert, Austrian priest and chronicler (d. after 1196), 92, 109, 114
- Anseau of Cahieu (Cayeux), French baron, 226; wife of, *see* Eudocia Lascaris
- Anselm (of Mauny), bishop of Laon 1215–1238: 403
- Anselm of Justingen, German marshal, 427, 436
- Anti-caliph, *see* ‘Alā-al-Mulk
- Anti-catholicism, *see* George
- Anti-popes, *see* Anacletus II 1130–1138, Victor IV 1159–1164
- Anti-Taurus mountains, 133, 631
- Antioch, city, 196, 632, 634, *and see* George; under Franks 1098–1189: 10, 38, 39, 46, 47, 50, 52, 126, 127, 133, 134, 326, 637–639, 642, 645; under Franks 1189–1268: 49, 113, 115, 508, 527, 528, 532–538, 540, 541, 559, 566, 577, 698, 749, 759, 762; under Moslems after 1268: 578, 654; Greek patriarchs of, *see* Athanasius, Symeon II, David, Euthymius; Latin patriarchs of, *see* Bernard of Valence 1100–1135, Ralph (of Domfront) 1135–1139, Aimery of Limoges 1139–1196?, Peter of Angoulême 1201–1208, Peter (of Lochedio) 1209–1217, Albert (Rezzato) 1226–1245, Opizon (Fieschi) 1247–1268
- Antioch, principality, before 1189: 5, 9–12,

- 127, 132-134, 572, 635-638, 640-643; 1189-1243: 456, 522 note, 524, 526-529, 531-538, 540, 541, 544, 545, 547, 549, 550, 603, 646, 648, 652, 682, 697, 760; 1243-1268: 507, 559, 566, 578, 718, 727, 749; after 1268: 590; princes of, *see* Bohemond I 1099-1111, Bohemond II 1126-1130, Raymond of Poitiers 1136-1149, Bohemond III 1163-1201, Bohemond IV 1201-1216, 1219-1233, Raymond Roupen 1216-1219, Bohemond V 1233-1252, Bohemond VI 1252-1268, *and also* Henry, Philip, Raymond (2), William; princesses of, *see* Constance 1136-1163, *and also* Alice, Lucienne of Segni, Lucy, Margaret, Maria, Mary (3), Melisend of Lusignan, Plaisance, Sibyl (2); regents of, *see* Tancred 1101-1103, 1104-1112, Roger of Salerno 1112-1119, Constance 1149-1153, 1160-1163, Reginald of Châtillon 1153-1160, Lucienne of Segni 1252-1252
- Anushtigin (of Gharcha), slave of Malik-Shāh; founder of Khorezm-Shāhs (c. 1078, d. 1098), 669
- Anweiler, *see* Markward
- Apamea, 582, 696
- Apulia, 239, 334 note; under Normans, 5-9, 13, 15, 25, 29-31, 41, 132, 136, 137; under Hohenstaufens, 109, 439, 440, 442, 460, 541, 761; under Angevins, 256, 259, 591; barons of, 7, 9, 21, 29; dukes of, *see* Robert Guiscard, Roger Borsa, William, Roger; "king of", 382
- Aqsā mosque, at Jerusalem, 455; *see also* Temple
- Aqsarāyī, chronicler (d. after 1323), 732
- Aquino, *see* Thomas
- Aquitaine, 56, *and see* Eleanor; duke of, 48, 54; seneschal of, 294
- Arab, son of Kilij Arslan I; Selchūkid rebel (in 1126), 636, 677
- Arabia, 749
- Arabic language, transliteration and nomenclature, xix-xxi
- Arabs, Semitic people, xx, xxi, 671, 676, 720, 731, 732; in North Africa, 17-23, 25, 28, 29; in Egypt, 495, 675, 707, 743; in Syria, 390, 675, 699, 703, 710, 747; in Cilicia, 632; in Mesopotamia, 663, 719; *see also* Beduins, Melkites
- Aragon, 300, 304, 309, 311, 367, 371, 372, 375, 762; kings of, 33, 279, 301, 303, 323, *and see* Peter II 1196-1213, James I 1213-1276, Peter III 1276-1285, James II 1291-1327; princesses of, *see* Constance, Eleanor, Isabel, Sancia; soldiers from, 260, 270, 302, 311, 313
- Arcadia, district, 237, 240, 248, 251, 258
- Arcadia, town, 237
- Arcadiopolis, 105
- Archibald X, lord of Bourbon 1242-1249: 493
- Archipelago, 253, 257, 258; duchy of, 202, 229, 240, 243, 245, 248, 256, 263, 272; dukes of, *see* Sanudos
- Archontes (Greek, magnates), 237, 248-252, 264, 266
- Arcis (-sur-Aube), *see* John
- Argentan, *see* Geoffrey, Richard
- Arghun, son of Abagha; Īl-khan of Persia 1284-1291: 655, 720, 722, 751
- Argolid, 235, 236, 241, 258
- Argolis, Gulf of, 238
- Argos, 240, 241, 243, 245, 259, 263; bishopric of, 252
- Ariège river, 295
- Arioudzpert, 638
- Arles, 284, 292 note; archbishops of, 309, 483
- Arm of St. George, 96, 104
- Armand of Périgord, master of the Temple 1232-1244: 463, 464, 471, 472, 475, 479, 481, 484, 485, 561-563
- Armenia (Greater), 653, 659; Aiyūbids in, 402, 421, *and see* Akhlat; Armenians of, 630-632, 647, 653; Mongols in, 652, 730; Turks in, 631, 662, 673, 674, 680, 684, 691, 729
- Armenia, Cilician (or Lesser), 393, 424, 525, 533, 538, 584, 587, 591; barony of (to 1198), 526-529, 603, 634-647, 658; kingdom of, xvii, 507, 529, 537-541, 549, 577, 609, 647-659, 679, 682, 748, 749, 755, 762; kings of, *see* Roupenids, Hetoumids; princes of, *see* Roupenids, Philip of Antioch 1222-1224; regents of, *see* Thomas 1168-1170, Adam of Gaston 1219-1221, Constantine I 1221-1226; *see also* Cilicia
- Armenian church, 529, 534, 541, 578, 623, 641, 647, 649, 653, 658 note; *see also* Catholicus
- Armenian language, transliteration and nomenclature, xxii
- Armenians, Indo-European people, 630, 631, 636, 640, 653, 730, 740, 751; in Armenia, 664, 685, 731; in Cilicia, xviii, 112, 133, 526, 533, 535, 539-541, 550, 565, 573, 586, 600 note, 632-659, 677, 692, 697, 717, 720, 721, 727; in Cyprus, 621 note, 622, 623; in Palestine, 562, 646; in Latin empire, 108, 200, 202, 203; on fifth crusade, 424, 427
- Arnold (of Rovinjan), bishop of Agen 1209-1228: 295
- Arnold, bishop of Nîmes 1212-1242: 307
- Arnold (of Altena), bishop of Osnabrück 1173-1191: 92, 93
- Arnold Amalric, abbot of Cîteaux 1200-1212: 157 note; papal legate in Languedoc, archbishop of Narbonne 1212-1225: 283, 285-287, 291, 297, 299, 307, 308
- Arnold of Lübeck, German abbot and chronicler (d. 1212), 120
- Arnstadt, 340
- ‘Arqah, 576
- Arsenius (of Apollonia), Orthodox patriarch

- at Nicaea 1255-1259, at Constantinople 1261-1265 (d. 1273), 227
- Arsinoë, 625
- Arsuf, 74, 454, 508, 524, 575, 748; battle (1191), 74, 75, 759; forest of, 75; lords of, *see* Thierry d'Orques c. 1192-c. 1205, John of Ibelin 1236-1258, Balian of Ibelin 1258-1265
- Arta, 201, 267
- Arta, Gulf of, 263
- Arthur, nephew of Richard I; Plantagenet duke of Brittany 1196-1203: 53, 54, 59, 533
- Artois, 70, 211; counts of, 261, 262, 497-501
- Artuk Arslan, Nāṣir-ad-Dīn, Artukid ruler of Mardin c. 1200-c. 1240: 705
- Artukids, Turkoman dynasty in Mesopotamia 1101-1408: 664, 673, 699, 701, 703, 704, *and see* İl-Ghāzī, Artuk Arslan, Maudūd, al-Khiḍr
- Arundel, earl of, 417
- Asadī mamluks, 737
- Ascalon: under Franks 1153-1187: 50; under Moslems 1187-1239: 71, 76-79, 82, 83, 85, 423, 473, 474, 523, 695 note, 706; under Franks 1239-1247: 463, 475-481, 484, 552, 558, 563-565, 614, 708-710; under Moslems after 1247: 575
- Asen, Vlach tsar of Bulgaria 1186-1196: 100, 102, 147, 148, 201
- Ashmūn (ar-Rummān), 408, 498, 499, 502
- al-Ashraf Khalil, Ṣalāḥ-ad-Dīn, son of Kalavun; Mamluk sultan of Egypt and Syria 1290-1293: 595-598, 617, 656, 753-755, 762
- al-Ashraf Mūsā, Muẓaffar-ad-Dīn, son of al-ʿĀdil I Saif-ad-Dīn; Aiyūbid ruler of the Jazīra 1202-1229: 673, 696, 698-701; lord of Akhlat 1210-1233: 402, 421-426, 449, 453, 683, 684; ruler of Damascus 1229-1237, of Baalbek 1230-1237: 547, 702-704; daughter of, 705
- al-Ashraf Mūsā, Muẓaffar-ad-Dīn, son of al-Manṣūr Ibrāhīm; Aiyūbid ruler of Homs 1246-1263: 710, 711, 714
- al-Ashraf Mūsā, Muẓaffar-ad-Dīn, son (or grandson) of al-Masʿūd Yūsuf; Aiyūbid co-sultan of Egypt 1250-1252: 503, 712, 742, 743
- Ashrafī mamluks, 707
- Asia Minor, 12, 125, 151, 200, 201, 247, 631, 673, 729; first crusade in, 126; third crusade in, 49, 91, 92, 110, 148; Latins in, 190-192, 202-206, 209, 215, 216; Mongols in, 220, 223; *see also* Anatolia
- Aslun Khātūn, 3rd wife of Kalavun, 753
- Aspietes, Armenian governor of Tarsus, 633
- Assassins (Arabic, Ḥashshashīn), Ismāʿīlite quasi-Moslem sect, 788; in Persia, 665, 666, 717, 761; in Syria, 34, 80, 81, 523, 528, 547, 581, 583, 698, 749, 759, 762; masters in Syria, *see* Rāshid-ad-Dīn, Naṣr, Najm-ad-Dīn
- Assisi, *see* Francis
- Asti, 268
- Astypalaea, 238
- Aswan, 699
- Atabeg (Turkish, regent), 133, 662, 670, 672, 698, 744
- Athanasius, Orthodox patriarch of Antioch 1165-1170: 140
- Athens, 13, 14 note, 196, 202, 208, 237, 248, 272; archbishopric of, 252; bailie of, 263; duchy of, 229, 246 note, 261, 263-265, 269, 271, 272; dukes of, 273, *and see* lords of; lords of, *see* De la Roches (1205-1308), Walter of Brienne 1309-1311; lordship of, 238, 240, 243, 248; metropolitan of, 252; regent of, *see* Helena Angelina Comnena 1287-1296
- Athos, Mount, monastery, 128, 626
- Athyra, 171
- Attica, 192, 236, 246, 762
- Aubrey (of Humbert), archbishop of Rheims 1207-1218: 287, 386
- Aubrey Clement of Metz, marshal of France (d. 1191), 68
- Aubrey of Trois-Fontaines, French chronicler (c. 1240), 335, 337-339, 471
- Auch, archbishop of, *see* Gerard, Amannian
- Augsburg, bishop of, 446
- Augustinians, order, 252, 333
- al-Auḥad Aiyūb, Najm-ad-Dīn, son of al-ʿĀdil I Saif-ad-Dīn; Aiyūbid ruler of the Jazīra 1198-1202, of Diyār-Bakr 1202-1210, lord of Akhlat 1207-1210: 696
- Aulonarion, 257
- Aumale, count of, 49
- Austria, crusaders from, 444, 447, 539; dukes of, *see* Babenberg
- Autremencourt, *see* Thomas I, Thomas II, Thomas III
- Auvergne, 319, 492; count of, 287
- Auxerre, bishop of, 212; count of, 212
- Avesnes (-sur-Helpe), *see* James I, James II, John II, Walter
- Avignon, 291, 309, 317, 318, 373, 375
- Avlona, 3, 127, 256-258, 260
- Avshars, Turkoman people, 662
- Ayas, 650, 654, 655, 724, 730, 749
- Aybeg, al-Muʿizz ʿIzz-ad-Dīn, Mamluk co-sultan of Egypt 1250-1252, sultan 1252-1257: 503, 567, 574, 712, 713, 740-744, 761; wife of, *see* Shajar-ad-Durr
- Aymar ("the Monk"; dei Corbizzi), patriarch of Jerusalem 1194-1202: 156, 525, 526, 530
- Aymar of Lairon, lord of Caesarea 1192-1213, marshal of the Hospital c. 1216-1219: 524, 536
- Ayrivank, *see* Erivan; *see also* Mkhitar ʿAzāz, 636
- Azerbaijan, xxii, 575, 662-665, 671-673, 683 701, 717; rulers of, 662, 670, 672, 726; troops from, 664

- al-ʿAzīz, Ḥammādid emir at Bougie 1105–1121: 20
- al-ʿAzīz Muḥammad, son of aḏ-Ẓāhir Ghāzī; Aiyūbid ruler of Aleppo 1216–1236: 541, 651 note, 683, 698, 704
- al-ʿAzīz Muḥammad, son of an-Nāṣir Yūsuf; Aiyūbid prince (d. after 1258), 714
- al-ʿAzīz ʿUthmān, ʿImād-ad-Dīn, son of Saladin; Aiyūbid governor of Egypt 1186–1193, sultan of Egypt 1193–1198, ruler of Damascus 1196–1198: 693, 695
- al-ʿAzīz ʿUthmān, ʿImād-ad-Dīn, son of al-ʿĀdil I Saif-ad-Dīn; Aiyūbid lord of Banyas c. 1211–c. 1233: 701, 702
- al-Azraq canal, 397, 405
- B—, archdeacon of Latakia, Latin bishop of Paphos (after 1196, d. before 1220), 624
- Baalbek, 564, 693, 701, 703, 704, 706, 710, 754; rulers of, *see* Aiyūbids (1174–1260)
- Baba (Turkish, old man), 690
- Baba Ishāq, Turkoman rebel (d. 1241), 691, 727
- Babaṛon, 633, 634; lord of, 639, 643, 644
- Babenberg, *see* Leopold V, Frederick I, Leopold VI
- Babylon, 27, *and see* Cairo, Fustat
- Bacon, 106, *and see* Batkun
- Baden, margrave of, 92, 93, 115
- Badr-ad-Dīn ibn-Ḥassūn, Egyptian emir, 425
- Baghdad, 336, 663, 666, 709, 735, 736, 744, 747; caliphs at, *see* ʿAbbāsids; Mongols at, 489, 571, 573, 578, 714, 717, 719, 744, 755; sultans at, 670
- Baghrās: under Franks to 1188: 639; under Saladin 1188–1191: 527, 646; under Armenians 1191–1211: 526–528, 534, 537, 646, 649, *and see* Adam of Gaston; under Franks 1211–1268: 537, 541, 550, 578, 654; *see also* Amanus mountains, castles of
- Bagnara (Calabra), 59
- Bagratids, Armenian dynasty at Ani 885–1064: *see* Gagik
- Bahāʿ-ad-Dīn, Arabic biographer (d. 1234), 77, 82
- al-Baḥr aṣ-Ṣaḡhīr, canal, 408, 424, 426
- Bahrām-Shāh, Fakhr-ad-Dīn, Mengüçekid lord of Erzincan c. 1160–1225: 683
- Bahrī mamluks, 711–714, 738–746, 750, 756
- Baidu, grandson of Hulagu; İl-khan of Persia 1295–1295: 656
- Baiju, Mongol general, 652, 692
- Baisan, 390, 539, 575
- Bait Nūbā, 82, 83
- Baldwin, archbishop of Canterbury 1184–1190: 47, 58, 64–66; chaplain of, 65
- Baldwin, constable of Armenia (d. 1188), 645
- Baldwin, count (V) of Hainault 1171–1195, count (VIII) of Flanders 1191–1194: 70; wife of *see* Margaret of Alsace
- Baldwin I, son of Baldwin V of Hainault; count (IX) of Flanders 1194–1205 and (VI) of Hainault 1195–1205: 155, 159, 160, 164, 167 note, 174, 175, 181 note, 182; Latin emperor of Romania 1204–1205: 189–195, 200, 203–205, 212, 213, 236, 262, 603, 760; wife of, *see* Mary (of Champagne)
- Baldwin II, son of Peter of Courtenay and Yolanda; Latin emperor of Romania 1228–1231: 213, 216, 219, 242, 760; co-emperor 1231–1237: 217, 466, 467, 761; emperor 1237–1261: 221–229, 231, 243, 248, 256, 468, 615, 761; titular emperor 1261–1273: 232, 255, 258, 260, 270, 363, 367; wife of, *see* Mary of Brienne
- Baldwin I (of Boulogne), count of Edessa 1098–1100, king of Jerusalem 1100–1118: 7, 635; wife of, *see* Adelaide of Montferrat
- Baldwin II (of Le Bourg), count of Edessa 1100–1118, king of Jerusalem 1118–1131: 632, 635; wife of, *see* Morfia
- Baldwin III, son of Fulk; king of Jerusalem 1143–1163: 134, 140, 640
- Baldwin IV (“the Leper”), son of Amalric; king of Jerusalem 1174–1185: 523, 619
- Baldwin V, son of William “Longsword” and Sibyl; king of Jerusalem 1185–1186: 46, 164
- Baldwin, lord of Marash (d. after 1146), 636
- Baldwin de Redvers (of Revers), earl of Devon 1245–1262: 483 note
- Baldwin Embriaco, son of Henry (d. 1282), 587
- Baldwin of Ibelin, son of Guy; constable of Cyprus, 590
- Baldwin of Ibelin, son of John I; seneschal of Cyprus 1246–1267: 560, 565, 614, 615, 652 note
- Baleares, 32, 36, 396; governor of, 20
- Balian (I) Grenier, son of Reginald and Helvis; lord of Sidon c. 1204–1240: 392, 447, 453, 454, 479, 481, 542, 560; co-bailie of Jerusalem 1228–1228, 1229–1231: 460, 544, 546, 548; baronial co-bailie 1233–1240: 472, 475, 476, 550
- Balian II of Ibelin, lord of Ibelin and Ramla c. 1187–1193: 46, 66, 524; wife of, *see* Maria Comnena
- Balian III of Ibelin, son of John I; lord of Beirut 1236–1247, bailie of Jerusalem 1243–1247: 472, 551, 554, 559, 560, 626; wife of, *see* Eschiva of Montbéliard
- Balian of Ibelin, son of John, of Arsuf; lord of Arsuf 1258–1265 (titular 1265–1277), bailie of Jerusalem 1276–1277: 574, 585; wife of, *see* Plaisance (of Antioch)
- Balkans, 367, 369, 761; and Byzantine empire to 1204: 110, 118, 125–128, 131, 139, 140, 142, 144, 146–149, 220; third crusade in, 97, 110, *and see* Bulgaria; maps of, 186
- Baltic Sea, region of, 122, 736
- Bamberg, bishop of, 389

- Banū-Hilāl, Arab tribe in North Africa, 18, 20
- Banū-Khurasān, Arab family at Tunis, 25
- Banū-Maṭrūh, Arab family at Tripoli (in Africa), 23
- Banū-Sulaim, Arab tribe in North Africa, 18
- Banyas, 410, 507, 698, 714; lord of, 701, 702
- Bar (-le-Duc), counts of, *see* Henry I, Theobald I, Henry II
- Bar Hebraeus, Gregory Abū-l-Farāj, Jacobite patriarch at Aleppo 1252-1286: 632, 638, 724
- Barāmūn, 425, 426
- Barbary, *see* North Africa
- Barcelona, 396, 580
- Bari, *see* Maio; archbishop of, 359, 446, 451; diet at (1195), 118
- Baʿrīn, 534, 535, 547, 703
- Barletta, 450
- Bartholomew (of Vendôme), archbishop of Tours 1174-1206: 56
- Bartholomew (Mansel?), bishop of Tortosa 1263-after 1287, baillie of Tripoli 1275-1277: 584, 587, 591; nephew of, 587
- Bartholomew, lord of Maraclea (to 1286), 581, 752
- Bartholomew Embriaco, son of Bertrand; mayor of Tripoli 1287-1288: 591, 592, 752 note
- Bartholomew of Neocastro, Sicilian chronicler (c. 1285), 369
- Bartholomew Tirel, marshal of Antioch, 527
- Basel, bishop of, *see* Henry
- Basil, archbishop of Tirnovo 1186-1203 (Orthodox), 1203-1204 (Latin), primate of Bulgaria 1204-1217?: 147, 149, 201, 760
- Basil II ("Boulgaroktonos"), Byzantine co-emperor 963-976, emperor 976-1025: 123, 124, 130, 203
- Basil Xeros, Byzantine envoy (d. c. 1145), 11
- Bath, bishop of, *see* Reginald fitz Jocelyn
- Batkun, 106
- al-Batrūn, *see* Botron
- Battles, *see* Manzikert (1071), Myriokephalon (1176), Hattin (1187), Arsuf (1191), Las Navas de Tolosa (1212), Muret (1213), Klokotnitsa (1230), Casal Imbert (1232), Agridi (1232), Gaza (1239), Liegnitz (1241), Köse Dagh (1243), Ḥarbīyah (1244), Pelagonia (1259), ʿAin Jālūt (1260), Benevento (1266), Tagliacozzo (1268), Albistan (1277), Cephissus (1311)
- Batu Khan, grandson of Genghis Khan; ruler of the Golden Horde 1243-1256: 692
- Bavaria, *see* Welf VI; crusaders from, 92, 93, 109, 389; duke of, 423, 435
- Baybars ("al-Bunduqdārī"), an-Nāṣir Rukn-ad-Dīn, slave of al-Bunduqdār, xviii; Mamluk general (to 1260), 500, 503, 508, 574, 709 note, 711, 712, 739, 745, 761; Mamluk sultan of Egypt and Syria 1260-1277: 574, 586, 714, 745-753, 755, 756, 761, 762; and Franks, 508, 509, 518, 574-584, 615, 616, 727, 748-750, 762; and Armenians, 575-577, 653, 654, 727, 749; and Selchūkids, 728, 748, 750; and Golden Horde, 575, 748; and Mongols, 508, 575, 582, 727, 728, 749, 750, 762
- Bayeux, bishop of, 386, 389
- Bayonne, bishop of, 56
- Baziège, 312
- Béarn, 294, 298; viscounts of, 297-299, 510
- Beatrice, wife of Joscelin II; regent of Edessa 1150-1150 (d. after 1152), 641
- Beaucaire, 309, 310, 318
- Beaufort (near St. George), 267, 272
- Beaujeu, lord of, *see* Humbert
- Beaumont (-sur-Oise), *see* Dreux
- Beaumont (-sur-Sarthe), viscount of, 469, 475, 476
- Beauvais, bishops of, 50, 66, 80, 349, 403
- Beauvoir, 249
- Beduins, desert Arabs, 18, 411, 546, 562, 563, 690, 743, 746, 751, 756; *see also* Arabs
- Beguines, order, 330
- Behesni, 639, 654, 656, 755
- Beirut, 71; under Moslems 1187-1197: 120, 121, 524, 530, 531, 695; under Franks 1197-1291: 121, 158 note, 451, 543, 548, 549, 558, 580, 584, 588, 589, 598, 611-613, 754; bishop of, 548; ladies of, *see* Isabel of Ibelin 1264-1282, Eschiva of Ibelin 1282-1291; lords of, *see* John I of Ibelin c. 1205-1236, Balian III of Ibelin 1236-1247, John II of Ibelin 1247-1264, Humphrey of Montfort 1282-1284
- Bela II ("the Blind"), king of Hungary 1131-1141: 131; wife of, *see* Helena (of Rascia)
- Bela III, brother of Stephen III; king of Hungary 1173-1196: 47, 91, 94, 137-141, 168, 386, 387; wives of, *see* Agnes of Châtillon, Margaret (of France)
- Bela IV, son of Andrew II and Gertrude; king of Hungary 1235-1270: 221, 387, 393; wife of, *see* Maria Lascaris
- Bela of St. Omer, lord of half of Thebes 1240-1258?: 244; wife of, *see* Bonne de la Roche
- Belfort, 51, 479, 481, 560, 574, 577 707, 749
- Bellapais, monastery, 628
- Bellevaux, abbey, 241
- Belvoir, 415, 564
- Benedict, abbot of Peterborough (d. 1193), 45 note
- Benedict, cardinal-deacon 1200-1201, cardinal-priest 1201-1212, cardinal-bishop (of Porto) 1212-1216, papal legate at Constantinople, 196, 199, 377

- Benedict XI (Nicholas Boccasini), pope 1303-1304: 762
- Benedictines, order, 331
- Benevento, 8 note, 29, *and see* Peter; battle (1266), 255, 366, 508, 509, 762
- Benjamin of Kalamata, chancellor of Achaea (to 1302), 266
- Benjamin of Tudela, Jewish traveler and author (c. 1160), 142
- Berard (Costa, of Castacca), archbishop of Bari 1207-1213, of Palermo 1213-1252: 449
- Berat, 258, 260
- Berbers, Hamitic people, 17, 18, 20, 21, 26, 28, 32
- Berengar, abbot of St. Thibéry, 307
- Berengaria, daughter of Sancho VI of Navarre; wife of Richard I of England 1191-1199 (d. 1230), 61-64, 77, 600, 601
- Berengaria, sister of Ferdinand III of Castile; 3rd wife of John of Brienne 1224-1237: 216, 542
- Berg, county: counts of, *see* Engelbert, Adolf
- Berg, town, *see* Frederick
- Berke Khan, as-Sa'îd Nâsir-ad-Dîn, son of Baybars; Mamluk sultan of Egypt and Syria 1277-1279, lord of Kerak 1279: 750, 751
- Berke Khan, chieftain of Khorezmians, 709
- Berke Khan, brother of Batu Khan; ruler of the Golden Horde 1256-1266: 748
- Bernard, abbot of Clairvaux (d. 1153), 7, 9, 11 note, 12 note, 282, 345, 351
- Bernard, agent of Frederick I at Venice, 96
- Bernard, archbishop of Ragusa 1189-1203 (d. c. 1216), 156 note
- Bernard (of La Carra), bishop of Bayonne c. 1185-after 1204: 56
- Bernard, bishop of Tripoli 1286-1288 (d. after 1295), 594
- Bernard IV, count of Comminges 1181?-1225: 293, 297-300, 303, 304, 311, 318
- Bernard V, son of Bernard IV; count of Comminges 1225-1241: 318
- Bernard of Valence, Latin patriarch of Antioch 1100-1135: 127
- Berrhoea, 96, 102, 103
- Bertha of Sulzbach ("Irene"), 1st wife of Manuel I Comnenus 1146-1160: 10, 11, 15, 133, 134, 136
- Berthold V (of Andechs), son of Berthold IV; archbishop of Kalocsa (and Bacs) 1206-1218, patriarch of Aquileia 1218-1251: 387, 389
- Berthold, bishop of Naumburg and Zeitz 1186-1206: 120
- Berthold I, count of Katzenellenbogen 1173?-1217?, lord of Velestinon 1205-1217?, regent of Thessalonica 1207-1217?: 238
- Berthold V, nephew of bishop Rudolph of Liège; count of Nimburg (and Zähringen) 1186-1218: 92, 93
- Berthold, count of (Künsberg and) Tuscany (in 1189), 108
- Berthold IV (of Andechs), duke of Dalmatia and Meran (Croatia) and margrave of Istria 1188-1204: 92, 93, 100, 102, 104, 106, 107, 111, 120
- Berthold, margrave of Vohburg (d. 1204), 92, 93
- Berthold of Hohenburg, regent of Sicily 1254-1254 (d. 1256), 360, 361
- Bertino Visconti, bailie of Achaea 1308-1309: 270
- Bertrand (Savelli), cardinal-priest 1217-1221, papal legate in Languedoc, 312-314
- Bertrand Embriaco, second cousin of Guy I (d. c. 1258), 570, 587, 591
- Bertrand of Thessy, master of the Hospital 1228-1230: 452, 454, 458
- Besançon, 364
- Bethlehem, 455, 464, 479, 480, 506, 546, 558; bishop of, 404; merchants from, 585
- Béthune, *see* Conon, John
- Béziers, 287-289, 327, 760; viscount of, 286, 288
- Biandrate, *see* Oberto
- Bigorre, 311
- Bilarghu, Mongol emir, 658, 762
- Bilbais, 695, 707, 743
- al-Biqā', 558, 573, 709
- Bira, 641, 749, 755; lord of, 632, 636
- Blachernae, palace at Constantinople, 14, 150, 178, 179, 182, 190, 231
- Black Sea, 206, 230, 231, 572; coasts of, 191, 200, 678, 681, 682, 723, 724, 730
- Blanche of Castile, aunt of Ferdinand III; wife of Louis VIII of France 1200-1226, regent of France 1226-1236, 1248-1252: 221, 223-225, 229, 319, 321, 341, 470, 507
- Blois, countess of, 597; counts of, *see* Stephen, Theobald V, Louis I; county of, 158
- Bodonitsa, 242, 243, 245, 252; lady of, *see* Isabel Pallavicini; marquis of, *see* Guy Pallavicini, Albert Pallavicini
- Boeotia, 13, 236, 241, 271
- Bogomil heresy, heretics, 128, 144, 208
- Bohemia, crusaders from, 93, 105; duke of, 93
- Bohemond I, son of Robert Guiscard; prince of Antioch 1099-1111: 5, 6, 10, 125-127, 132, 185, 635
- Bohemond II, son of Bohemond I; prince of Antioch 1126-1130: 10, 133, 636
- Bohemond III, son of Raymond of Poitiers and Constance; prince of Antioch 1163-1201: 63, 85, 524, 526-528, 532, 533, 641, 643, 644, 646, 649, 759; wife of, *see* Sibyl
- Bohemond IV ("the One-Eyed"), son of Bohemond III; count of Tripoli 1187-1233: 85, 388, 392, 393, 456, 526-528, 532, 540, 609, 646, 649; prince of Antioch 1201-1216: 531-538, 697, 698; 1219-

- 1233: 456, 541, 544, 547, 549, 652, 761; sons of, 606, 651; wife of, *see* Melisend (of Lusignan-Jerusalem)
- Bohemond V, son of Bohemond IV: 544; prince of Antioch and count of Tripoli 1233-1252: 474, 478, 550, 558, 563, 565, 566, 571, 585, 761; wives of, *see* Alice (of Champagne-Jerusalem), Lucienne of Segni
- Bohemond VI, son of Bohemond V and Lucienne; prince of Antioch 1252-1268 (titular to 1275), 507, 567, 569, 570, 572, 575, 577, 587, 591, 653, 761; count of Tripoli 1252-1275: 578, 579, 581, 584, 615, 762; daughter of, 261; sister of, 606; wife of, *see* Sibyl (Hetoumid)
- Bohemond VII, son of Bohemond VI; count of Tripoli (and titular prince of Antioch) 1275-1287: 584, 586-588, 591, 752, 762
- Bohemond "of Lusignan", son of Hugh III of Cyprus (d. 1283), 589
- Bon, Cape, 18, 25, 31
- Bona, 25 note, 27 note, 28, 29
- Boniface II, son of William III; marquis of Montferrat 1192-1207: 143, 164-178, 182-185, 188-190, 207; king of Thessalonica 1204-1207: 151, 165, 190, 192, 201-203, 205, 206, 236-238, 240, 760; wife of, *see* Margaret (of Hungary)
- Boniface III, son of William IV; marquis of Montferrat 1225-1253, (titular king of Thessalonica 1230-1253), 460
- Boniface VIII (Benedict Gaetani), pope 1294-1303: 265, 266, 374, 657, 762
- Boniface (dalle Carceri) of Verona, grandson of William I; lord of Gardiki and Aegina 1294-1317: 271, 272
- Bonnacorso (of Gloria), archbishop of Tyre 1272-after 1286: 590
- Bonne de la Roche, sister of Guy I of Athens; wife of Demetrius of Montferrat (to 1227), wife of Bela of St. Omer (after 1240), 244
- Bordeaux, archbishops of, *see* William, Gerald
- Boril, nephew of Ioannitsa; Vlach tsar of Bulgaria 1207-1218: 205, 206, 208-210, 213; wife of, 205
- Bosnia, 131, 139; ban of, 149
- Bosporus, 197, 214; city on, 37, 509, *and see* Constantinople; crossing of, 178, 200, 201, 205, 217, 223; mouth of, 231
- Bosra, 710
- Botron, 587, 593, 752, *and see* John; lords of, 563, 570
- Bouchard of Marly, lord of Cabaret, 294 note
- Bougie, 23, 27 note, 336, 339; rulers of, *see* Hammädids
- Bouillon, *see* Godfrey
- Boukoleon, palace at Constantinople, 182, 189, 190, 205, 231
- Boulbonne, abbey: monks of, 296 note
- Boulogne (-sur-Mer), 48, *and see* Baldwin (I, of Jerusalem); count of, 155, 287
- Bourbon, lord of, *see* Archibald
- Bourges, 316, 341; council of (1225), 315, 316
- Boves, *see* Enguerrand
- Brabant, 341, 381; duke of, *see* Henry
- Bracieux, *see* Peter
- Bragana, 645; lord of, 639
- Bram, 294 note
- Branas, *see* Alexius, Theodore
- Brandoveus, 102, *and see* Voden
- Branits, 94, 98, 100; "duke" of, 98, 99
- Bremen: archbishop of, 120; burghers from, 115
- Brescia, bishop of, *see* Albert
- Brest, 395
- Brie, *see* Martin IV (Simon of)
- Briel, *see* Geoffrey
- Brienne (-la-Vieille), counts of, *see* Erard II, Walter III, Walter IV, Hugh, Walter V, *and also* Andrew, Isabel, John, Mary; county of, 472
- Brindisi, 29, 137, 446, 447, 483, *and see* Margarit; as seaport, 115, 177, 382, 442, 443, 446, 451, 460, 461, 542; archbishops of, *see* Peter, Dominic
- Brittany, 328; counts of, *see* Peter of Dreux, John; crusaders from, 50, 74, 582; duke of, 59, 533, *and see* count of; heiress of, 470
- Bruges, 159
- Brunswick, duke of, 432, 433, *and see* Otto
- Brusa, 201, 202
- Buddhism, religion, 720
- Buffa, Amadeo, *see* Amédée Pofey
- Buffavento, 601, 613
- Bukhara, 671
- Bulgar Dagh, 634
- Bulgaria: before 1189: 128, 144, 146, 147; third crusade in, 91, 94-98, 100, 101, 105, 106, 109, 147; 1189-1204: 119, 148, 149; 1204-1261: 192, 194, 200, 201, 203-205, 209-211, 213, 217, 219-221, 225, 228, 230, 394, 466, 760; after 1261: 367, 368; king of, *see* Ioannitsa 1204-1207, John Asen 1218-1241; patriarch of, *see* Joachim; primate of, *see* Basil; princesses of, *see* Helena, Maria (2); tsars of, *see* Symeon 893-927, Asen 1186-1196, Peter 1196-1197, Ioannitsa 1197-1204, Boril 1207-1218, Coloman I 1241-1246, George I 1280-1292
- Bulgars, Turkic people, 97, 98, 100, 116, 147, 213, 717
- al-Bunduqār, 'Alā'-ad-Dīn Aytigin, governor of Damascus (in 1261), 709 note, 746
- al-Buqaī'ah, valley, 576, 581, 592
- Būrah, 404
- Burgundia of Lusignan, daughter of Aimery and Eschiva; wife of Walter of Montbéliard, 605
- Burgundy, 242, 490; crusaders from, 166,

- 167, 238, 241; dukes of, *see* Hugh III, Odo III, Hugh IV, *and also* Louis
- Burhān-ad-Dīn, qadi at Sebastia (d. 1398), 730
- Burjī mamluks, 753
- Burkhard IV (of Querfurt), burgrave of Magdeburg 1179-1190: 93, 115
- Burkhard, count of Wöltingerode (in 1189), 92
- Burkhard of Schwanden, master of the Teutonic Knights 1283-1290 (d. after 1304), 591, 595
- Burlus, 422
- Butrinto, 258, 260
- Buzā'ah, 699, 708
- Byzantine emperors, before 1204: 5, 8-11, 171, *and see* Nicephorus I 802-811, Romanus I (919-944), Basil II (963) 976-1025, Michael V (1041-1042), Romanus IV 1068-1071, Michael VII 1071-1078, Alexius I 1081-1118, John II 1118-1143, Manuel I 1143-1180, Alexius II 1180-1183, Andronicus I 1183-1185, Isaac II 1185-1195, (1203-1204), Alexius III 1195-1203, Alexius IV (1203-1204), Alexius V 1204-1204; at Nicaea 1208-1261: *see* Theodore I 1208-1222, John III 1222-1254, Theodore II 1254-1258, Michael VIII (1258-1261); after 1261: *see* Michael VIII 1261-1282, Andronicus II 1282-1328, Michael IX (1295-1320), John V 1341-1347, 1354-1376, 1379-1390, 1390-1391, John VI 1347-1354, John VIII 1425-1448
- Byzantine empire, 214; to 1204: xvii, 5, 9, 11, 13, 14, 24, 29-31, 36-38, 88, 90-92, 94, 96-110, 116-119, 122-151, 161, 162, 166, 170, 172 note, 182, 185, 191-193, 200, 235, 602, 608, 622, 631-635, 637, 638, 640, 664, 675-681, 760; 1204-1261, *see* Nicaea, empire; after 1261: 233, 255, 260, 270, 365, 367-370, 657, 718, 719, 727, 729
- Byzantines, *see* Byzantine emperors, Greeks, Orthodox Christians
- Byzantium, *see* Byzantine empire, Constantinople
- Ca' Pesaro, Venetian firm, 232
- Cabaret, 288, 290, 292, 294 note
- Cadiz, 395
- Caen, *see* Radulf
- Caesarea (in Anatolia), 631, 645, 657, 687, 690, 692, 728, 750
- Caesarea (in Palestine): under Saladin 1187-1191: 84; under Franks 1191-1265: 394, 422, 448, 454, 507, 524, 539, 542, 699; under Moslems after 1265: 508, 575, 583, 748; archbishops of, 389, 457, 458, 525, 545; lords of, *see* Aymar of Lairon 1192-1213, Walter 1213-1229, John 1229-1241, John l'Aleman 1241-1265
- Cagliari, 512, 515
- Cahieu, *see* Cayeux; *see also* Anseau Cahors, 293, 320; bishop of, 293
- Cairo, 398, 399, 414, 567, 577, 695, 699, 707, 711, 737-739, 741, 743-749, 752-755, 757; attacks on, 423, 424, 430, 436, 497, 498, 501, 539, 610; caliphs at, *see* Fāṭimids; government at, 17, 484, 505-507, 579, 591-595, 735; people of, 35, 411, 738, 757; sultans at, *see* Aiyūbids, Mamluks; trade with, 22
- Calabria, 7, 13, 15, 20, 59, 61, 136; pirate from, 205
- Caliphate, caliphs (Arabic singular, *khalfah*), early, *see* 'Alī 656-661; of Baghdad, *see* 'Abbāsids; of Cairo, *see* Fāṭimids, 'Abbāsids; of Morocco, *see* Muwahhids; *see also* Anti-caliph
- Calixtus II (Guy of Vienne), pope 1119-1124: 132
- Caltabellotta, peace of (1302), 270
- Calycadnus river, 49, 114
- Camardias, 650
- Cambodia, 717
- Cambrai, bishop of, *see* Roger
- Candia, 396; *see also* Crete
- Canina, 258, 260
- Canossa, *see* Albertino, Rolandino
- Cantacuzenus, 270, *and see* John VI 1347-1354, Michael; *see also* Anna Cantacuzena
- Canterbury, archbishop of, 47, 58, 64, 66; chapter of, 65
- Capdolh, *see* Chapdeuil; *see also* Pons
- Capetians, dynasty in France 987-1848: 11, 54, 57, 59, 244, 245, 279, 321, 322, 369, 371, 470, 490, 514, *and see* Louis VI 1108-1137, Louis VII 1137-1180, Philip II 1180-1223, Louis VIII 1223-1226, Louis IX 1226-1270, Philip III 1270-1285, Philip IV 1285-1314; *see also* Agnes, Alice, Alphonse of Poitiers, Charles of Anjou, Charles of Valois, Margaret, Mary, Robert of Artois
- Cappadocia, 144, 631, 639, 678, 680, 750
- Capua, 155 note, 359, 450, 454; principate of, 8, 259
- Carcassonne, 288, 289, 291, 292, 300, 311, 312, 314, 315, 760; bishop of, 277 note; seneschal of, 323; viscounts of, 286, 288, 292; viscounty of, 290; walls of, plate 1A
- Cardinals, 156, 173, 353, 354, 363, 365, 369, *and see* Peter Damian 1058-c.1066, Conrad of Wittelsbach 1163-1200, Henry 1179-1188, Octavian (Conti) 1182-1206, Soffredo (of Pisa) 1182-1208, Peter Capuano 1192-1214, Ugolino (de' Conti) 1198-1227, Benedict 1200-1216, Leo (Brancaleone) 1200-c. 1230, Pelagius (Galvani) 1205-1230, Stephen Langton 1205-1228, John Colonna 1212-1245, Robert of Courçon 1216-1219, Romanus (Bonaventura) 1216-1243, Bertrand (Savelli) 1217-1221, Conrad (of Urach) 1219-1227, Nicholas (of Claromonte) 1219-1227, Oliver (Saxo) 1225-1227, James of

- Vitry 1228-1240, Octavian (Ubal dini) 1244-1273, Odo of Châteauroux 1244-1273, Peter Capocci 1244-1259
- Carintana dalle Carceri, cousin of Narzotto; hexarch of northern Euboea 1220-1255, 2nd wife of William II of Achaea, 245
- Carinthia, duke of, 120
- Carmel, Mount, 575, 577, 582, 588
- Carmelites, order, 252
- Carpentras, bishop of, *see* Geoffrey
- Carthage, 27 note, 516
- Carthusians, order, 156
- Caryae, Mount, 246
- Carystus, 236, 239, 272; lords of, 246, 271
- Casal Imbert; battle (1232), 549, 613, 761
- Caspian Sea, 664, 672, 717
- Cassandra, 270
- Casseneuil, 287 note, 303
- Castelnau (-le-Lez), *see* Peter
- Castelnaudary, 294, 302, 315
- Castile, 232; kings of, *see* Ferdinand III 1217-1252, Alfonso X 1252-1284; princesses of, *see* Berengaria, Blanche, Eleanor
- Castoria, 274; bishop of, 252
- Castres, 294 note
- Catalonia, 372; merchants from, 560, 568, 623; soldiers from, 260, 261, 270-274, 302, 313 note, 762
- Cathars, *see* Albigensian heretics
- Catherine of Courtenay, daughter of titular Latin emperor Philip; 2nd wife of Charles of Valois 1301-1308, titular empress of Constantinople 1285-1308: 270
- Catholicus, *see* Gregory III 1133-1166, Nersis 1166-1173, Gregory IV 1173-1193, Gregory VI 1194-1203, John 1203-1206, 1208-1229, Stephen IV 1290-1292, Gregory VII 1292-1307; *see also* Anticatholicus, Armenian church
- Caucasus mountains, 192, 665, 717
- Cayeux (-sur-Mer), *see* Anseau of Caheiu
- Caymont, 524, 699
- Celestine III (Hyacinthus Bobo Orsini), pope 1191-1198: 118, 149, 387, 526, 528, 534, 624, 646, 647, 759
- Celestine IV (Godfrey Castiglione), pope 1241-1241: 354, 761
- Celestine V (Peter of Morrone), pope 1294-1294 (d. 1296), 762
- Central Asia, 661, 668, 674, 689, 691, 715-717, 724, 736; Nestorians in, 668, 720, 721; steppes of, 670; trade with, 650, 655, 723, 730
- Ceos, 252
- Cephalonia, 13, 239, 451; bishop of, 252; counts of, *see* Orsinis; county of, 240, 245, 248, 263, 272
- Cephissus, stream; battle (1311), 271, 762
- Cépoys, *see* Chepoix; *see also* Theobald
- Cerigo, 239
- Cerigotto, 239
- Chaghatai, son of Genghis Khan (d. 1242), house of, 723; state of, 719, 723, 724
- Chalandritsa: baron of, 259, 261; barony of, 250
- Chalcedon, 177, 760
- Chalcidice, 270
- Chalon (-sur-Saône), count of, 53
- Châlons (-sur-Marne), 333 note
- Champagne, 68, 158, 240, 471, 536; counts of, *see* Hugh I, Henry I, Henry II, Theobald III, Theobald IV, Theobald V, *and also* Adela, Alice, Mary; marshal of, 160
- Champlitte (et-le-Prélot), *see* Hugh, Odo, William
- Chantilly, lord of, 469
- Chapdeuil, 766, *and see* Pons of Capdolh
- Charax, 205
- Charistikion (Greek), 129, 145
- Charles, son of Philip III of France; count of Valois (d. 1325), 270, 371, 372; wife of, *see* Catherine of Courtenay
- Charles I of Anjou, son of Louis VIII of France: 360, 363-366, 501, 505, 572, 748; king of Sicily (crowned 1266) 1268-1282: 42, 255-258, 366-370, 373, 508-518, 579, 607, 762; pretender to Jerusalem 1277-1285: 259, 583-586, 588, 589, 617, 762; prince of Achaea 1278-1285: 259-263, 272-274, 762; king of Naples ("Sicily") 1282-1285: 371, 372, 588
- Charles II ("the Lame", of Anjou), son of Charles I; Angevin king of Naples 1285-1309, prince of Achaea 1285-1289: 261-269, 273, 274, 617, 762
- Charles of Taranto, son of Philip I (d. 1315), 270
- Chartres, *see* William
- Chastel Blanc, 456, 577, 581, 698, 749
- Château de la Vieille, 547
- Château Pèlerin, 545, 575, 577, 588; construction (1218), 394, 395, 539; siege (1220), 422, 539, 699; fall (1291), 598
- Châteauneuf, *see* William
- Châteauroux, *see* Odo
- Châtelleraut, viscount of, *see* William
- Châtillon (-sur-Loing), *see* Agnes, Joan, Reginald, Walter
- Chauvigny, 766, *and see* Andrew
- Chelebi köy, 105
- Chemishkezek, 683
- Chepoix, *see* Theobald of Cépoys
- Cher river, valley of, 56
- Chester, earls of, 402, 414, 417, 482
- Children's crusade (1212), xviii, 325 note, 329-342, 378, 760, 762
- China, 668, 715-717, 723, 724
- Chinese Turkestan, 723
- Chinon, 49, 56
- Chios, 191
- Choisy (-le-Roi), *see* Nicholas
- Christian III, count of Oldenburg 1167-1192: 92
- Christodoulus, Sicilian admiral 1119-c. 1139: 21
- Christopolis, 207, 238
- Church, *see* Armenian, Greek, Latin

- Cilicia, xviii, 527, 536, 537, 540, 541, 577, 586, 632-659, 679, 684, 685, 717, 720, 724, 730; Byzantines in, 134, 140, 637-644; third crusade in, 113, 115, 680, 792; Turks in, 132, 572, 632, 634, 636, 637, 639, 642, 649, 651 note, 652, 653, 655, 680, 682, 697, 698, 725, 727; Mamluks in, 576, 577, 654-657, 749, 762; *see also* Armenia, Cilician
- Cilician Gates, pass, 634, 635, 645, 682, 727
- Cinnamus, John, Byzantine historian (d. c. 1190), 11, 133, 134, 136, 637
- Circuiz, 95
- Cistercians, order, 156, 157, 158 note, 166, 198, 277 note, 283, 383; in Sicily, 11 note, 12 note; in Frankish Greece, 241, 252; in Spain, 566
- Cîteaux, abbey, 158 note, 166; abbots of, 157 note, 283
- Citrum, 238
- Civetot, 205
- Civitavecchia, 396
- Clairvaux, abbot of, *see* Bernard
- Clari, *see* Cléry; *see also* Robert
- Clement III (Paolino Scolaro), pope 1187-1191: 58, 96, 645, 646 note, 759
- Clement IV (Guy Foulcois), pope 1265-1268: 255, 365-367, 373, 509-511, 722, 761, 762
- Clement V (Bertrand de Gouth), pope 1305-1314: 762
- Clermont (de l'Oise), count of, *see* Ralph, *and also* Simon
- Clermont (in Auvergne), bishop of, *see* Hugh
- Clermont (in Greece), 241, 248, 249
- Cléry (-sur-Somme), *see* Robert of Clari
- Clissa, castle at Spalato, 388
- Cloyes, 330, *and see* Stephen
- Cluny: abbots of, *see* Peter, William; monks of, 383
- Coggeshall, *see* Ralph
- Coligny, *see* Hugh
- Colmar, 333
- Cologne, 115, 331-335, 444, *and see* Nicholas; annals of, 172; archbishops of, 90, 117; scholasticus of, 381
- Coloman, son of Andrew II of Hungary and Gertrude; duke of Croatia (d. 1241), 387
- Coloman I, son of John Asen II and Maria; Vlach tsar of Bulgaria 1241-1246: 222, 225, 761
- Colonna, family, 374, *and see* John
- Comana, 631
- Commings, 294, 298, 303, 307, 311, 315; counts of, *see* Bernard IV, Bernard V
- Comnenus, Byzantine imperial dynasty at Constantinople 1057-1185: 123-146, 688, *and see* Alexius I 1081-1118, John II 1118-1143, Manuel I 1143-1180, Alexius II 1180-1183, Andronicus I 1183-1185; *see also* Alexius, Isaac, *and* Anna, Maria (2) Comnena; at Trebizond 1204-1461: *see* Alexius 1204-1222, David; at Epirus, Thessalonica, and Neopatras, *see* Angelus "Comnenus"
- Compiègne, 159
- Conflans (-Sainte Honorine), archdeacon of, *see* William Jordan
- Conon of Béthune, French baron and poet, regent of Romania 1216-1217, 1219-1221: 160, 178, 211, 213, 214
- Conrad (of Krosigk), bishop of Halberstadt 1201-1209 (d. 1225), 164
- Conrad, bishop of Hildesheim 1221-1246: 444, 445
- Conrad (of Laichling), bishop of Regensburg 1187-1204: 92, 93, 105, 120
- Conrad (of Urach), cardinal-bishop of Porto 1219-1227: 440
- Conrad, count of Dornberg (in 1189), 92, 93
- Conrad, count of Öttingen (in 1189), 92, 93
- Conrad III, Hohenstaufen king of Germany 1138-1152: 10-12, 15, 16, 131, 133, 135, 136; and the second crusade, 12, 15, 90, 117, 121, 135, 136
- Conrad IV, son of Frederick II and Isabel of Brienne; Hohenstaufen king of Jerusalem 1228-1254: 451, 464, 467, 468, 484, 544, 546, 547, 550-553, 559, 560, 567, 606, 611, 613, 761; emperor (uncrowned) of Germany and Sicily 1250-1254: 359, 360, 761; son of, 366
- Conrad, margrave of Landsberg 1190-1210: 120
- Conrad, scholasticus of Mainz, 434
- Conrad of Feuchtwangen, master of the Teutonic Knights 1290-1296: 595
- Conrad of Metz, chancellor of Germany, 434
- Conrad of Montferrat, son of William III: 38, 46, 47, 164, 165, 185; marquis of Montferrat 1188-1192: 51, 52, 62, 63, 65, 66, 601, 759; claimant to throne of Jerusalem 1190-1192: 66-68, 70, 71, 78-81, 116, 165, 443, 523, 530, 759; daughter of, 532; wives of, *see* Theodora Angelina, Isabel (of Jerusalem)
- Conrad of Querfurt, bishop of Hildesheim 1194-1198, of Würzburg 1198-1202, chancellor of Germany, 120, 121, 529, 530, 604, 647
- Conrad (landgrave) of Thuringia, master of the Teutonic Knights 1239-1240: 463, 472, 475
- Conrad of Wittelsbach, archbishop of Mainz 1183-1200, cardinal-bishop (of Sabina) 1163-1200: 91, 120, 121, 529, 647, 648
- Conrad Otto, duke of Moravia 1182-1191, of Bohemia 1189-1191: 93
- Conradin, son of emperor Conrad IV; Hohenstaufen duke of Swabia: 256, 351, 360, 362, 366-368, 509, 513; king of Jerusalem 1254-1268: 546, 567, 569, 571, 579, 607, 613, 761, 762
- Constance, treaty of (1183), 445
- Constance (Hohenstaufen), daughter of

- Manfred of Sicily; wife of Peter III of Aragon 1262-1285 (d. 1302), 370
- Constance, daughter of Roger II of Sicily; wife of emperor Henry VI 1186-1197 (d. 1198), 41, 59, 117, 130, 147, 528
- Constance ("Anna"), legitimized daughter of emperor Frederick II; 2nd wife of John III Ducas Vatatzes (after 1244), 225
- Constance of Antioch, daughter of Bohemond II; wife of Raymond of Poitiers 1136-1149, regent of Antioch 1149-1153, 1st wife of Reginald of Châtillon 1153-1164?, regent of Antioch 1160-1163: 10, 133, 134, 140, 641
- Constance of Aragon, sister of Peter II; wife of Emeric I of Hungary 1178-1204, 1st wife of emperor Frederick II 1209-1222: 434, 435, 438, 451
- Constantine, Armenian leader at Vahka, 637
- Constantine, Armenian lord of Gargar (to 1117), 632, 636
- Constantine, bishop of Orvieto c. 1250-1257: 228
- Constantine, son of Leon III; Hetoumid king of Cilician Armenia 1298-1299: 657
- Constantine I, grandson of Sempad of Barbaçon; Hetoumid lord of Lampron, regent of Armenia 1221-1226 (d. 1261), 540, 541, 651, 652
- Constantine II, son of Hetoum of Lampron; Hetoumid lord of Lampron, 652
- Constantine, grandson of Sempad of Babarçon; Hetoumid lord of Sarvantikar, 652 note; wife of, *see* Rita?
- Constantine, son of Roupén I; Roupénid lord of Partzapert 1092-1100: 633-635
- Constantine Coloman, Byzantine governor of Tarsus 1162-1173: 641, 642
- Constantine Lascaris, brother of Theodore I; Byzantine leader, 201 note
- Constantine Mesopotamites, Orthodox metropolitan of Thessalonica (to 1224), 214
- Constantine Palaeologus, brother of Michael VIII; sebastocrator (d. 1306), 253, 254
- Constantinople: under Comneni 1081-1185: 3-5, 11-14, 29, 37, 38, 62, 126-128, 130-133, 138-142, 144-146, 637, 639, 640, 642, 664, 678; under Angeli 1185-1204: 37, 42, 46, 92, 97, 98, 101, 103-109, 147-151, 161, 165, 169, 173, 174, 176-185, 197, 239, 531, 532, 608, 649, 681, 760; under Latins 1204-1261: 187, 189, 191, 193, 195-205, 210-233, 235, 238, 243, 244, 247, 248, 252, 377, 466-468, 482, 535, 544, 570, 682, 687; under Greeks after 1261: 232, 233, 253, 254, 271, 363, 368, 370, 371, 509, 513, 572, 584, 628, 657, 726, 752, 761; council of (381), 196; Greek patriarchs of, *see* Nicetas II 1186-1189, Arsenius 1261-1265, *and* patriarchs of Nicaea; Latin patriarchs of, *see* Thomas Morosini 1205-1211, Gervase 1215-1219, Matthew 1221-1226, Simon (of Mau-gastel) 1227-1232, Nicholas c. 1234-1251
- Constantinople, empire, *see* Byzantine empire, Latin empire
- Copais, Lake, 271, 274
- Copts, Christian sect, 411
- Corcondylus, Greek merchant, 264
- Corfu: before 1199: 13, 14, 24, 25, 135, 138, 146; under Franks 1199-1214: 176, 177, 181, 238, 760; under Epirus 1214-1259: 240, 451; under Franks after 1259: 256, 260, 263, 268, 273
- Corinth: under Greeks to 1205: 13, 14, 202; under Franks after 1205: 239, 253, 264, 267; archbishopric of, 252; castle at, 249; parliament at (1340), 267, 273
- Corinth, Gulf of, 13, 191, 247
- Corinth, Isthmus of, 237, 246
- Corinthia, 235, 236, 246, 258
- Cornwall, 54; earl of, *see* Richard
- Coron, 208, 238, 239; bishop of, 252
- Corycus, 650, 655; castellan of, 540, 651 note
- Cosmas, bishop of Mahdia 1148-1159 (d. 1160), 27, 31 note
- Coucy (-le-Château), castellan of, 158 note, 160
- Councils, ecumenical, *see* Constantinople (381), Third Lateran (1179), Fourth Lateran (1215), Lyons (1245, 1274), Ferrara-Florence (1438-1442); other, *see* Rheims (1148), Verona (1184), Dijon (1198), Lavaur (1213), Melun (1216), Bourges (1225), Toulouse (1229)
- Courçon, *see* Curzon; *see also* Robert
- Courtenay, 222; house of, 642, *and see* Agnes, Baldwin II, Catherine, Joscelin I, Joscelin II, Joscelin III, Mary, Peter, Philip (2), Robert (2), Yolanda
- Couserans, bishops of, *see* Navarre, Sancho
- Coutances, *see* Walter
- Coxon, 631, 639
- Creixell, 767, *and see* Dalmatz
- Cremona, 334; bishop of, 334; diet at (1226), 445
- Crete, 62, 177, 190, 191, 229, 238, 451, 512, 759; archbishop of, 421 (identity unknown); *see also* Candia
- Crèvecoeur, 267, 272
- Crimea, 682, 717, 726
- Croatia, 139, 146, 167, 175, 387; *see also* Meran
- Crown of Thorns, 222
- Crusade of 1197: 6 note, 42, 117-122, 149, 153, 528-531, 604, 608, 695, 759; map, 86
- Crusade of Frederick II (1228-1229), xvii, 429-451, 460-462, 541-543, 701; in Cyprus, 451, 543, 544, 610-612; in Syria, 349, 451-460, 544-546, 612, 702
- Crusade of 1239-1241: xviii, 463-469, 551, 614; French phase, 222, 243, 469-481, 706, 707, 761; English phase, 482-485, 708
- Crusade of 1249-1250: 356, 487, 488, 674; preparations, 488-493, 614; in Cyprus, 244, 493-495, 614, 761; in Egypt, 226,

- 245, 255, 495-504, 515, 566, 615, 711, 712, 735, 738, 739, 741, 761; in Syria, 504-508, 566, 567; map, 486
- Crusade of 1270, *see* Tunisian crusade
- Crusade of prince Edward (1270-1272), 510, 517, 518, 582-584, 615, 616, 762
- Crusades, *see* First crusade, Second crusade, Third crusade, Crusade of 1197, Fourth crusade, Albigenian crusade, Children's crusade, Political crusades, Fifth crusade, Crusade of Frederick II, Crusade of 1239-1241, Crusade of 1249-1250, Tunisian crusade, Crusade of prince Edward
- Culos, 105, *and see* Chelebekköy
- Curia Christi (Latin, court of Christ), 89
- Curzon, *see* Robert of Courçon
- Cuyk, count of, *see* Henry
- Cyclades, 192, 202, 238, 268
- Cydnus river, 635
- Cyprus: under Greeks to 1191: 37, 62-64, 133, 146, 599-602, 621, 622, 640, 646, 759; under Franks 1191-1218: xviii, 64, 67, 68, 81, 82, 118, 120, 148, 523, 525, 528-532, 540, 601-605, 607-609, 620-624, 647, 759, 760; 1218-1233: 412, 421, 443 note, 447, 451, 460, 462, 464, 543-546, 548, 549, 605, 606, 609-613, 618, 619, 623, 625-627, 682, 761; 1233-1253: 244, 245, 471, 492, 493, 495, 507, 512, 550, 551, 553, 560, 565, 606, 614, 615, 627, 684, 711; 1253-1291: 567, 571, 575, 581, 584-586, 588-590, 592, 593, 595, 596, 598, 606, 607, 615-617, 619, 620, 628, 749; after 1291: 269, 608, 618, 619, 623, 629, 656, 658; bailies of, *see* Philip of Ibelin, John I of Ibelin, Amalric Barlais (with 4 associates); barons of, 462, 464, 544, 548, 582, 588, 589, 604, 608, 610, 611, 616, 617, 619, 620, 624, 625, 629; crusaders from, 409, 414, 530, 539, 608-610, 614, 615, 617; high court of, 571, 605-607, 611, 619, 620, 626; kings of, *see* Aimery 1197-1205, Hugh I 1205-1218, Henry I 1218-1253, Hugh II 1253-1267, Hugh III 1267-1284, John 1284-1285, Henry II 1285-1324, Hugh IV 1324-1359; other rulers of, *see* Isaac Comnenus 1184-1191, Richard I (of England), Guy of Lusignan 1192-1194, Aimery of Lusignan 1194-1197; people of, 62-64, 582, 601, 603, 613, 621-624; regents of, *see* Walter of Montbeliard 1205-1210, Alice 1218-1232, Plaisance of Antioch 1253-1261, Hugh III 1261-1267, Amalric "of Lusignan" 1306-1310; map of, 556
- Cyrenaica, 735, 749
- Cyrrhus, 636; governor of, 642
- Cythnos, 239
- Cyzicus, 205, 209
- Daifah Khātūn, daughter of al-'Adil I Saif-ad-Dīn; wife of az-Zāhir Ghāzi (to 1216), regent of Aleppo (after 1236), 698, 704
- Dailam, tribes of, 668
- Dajig, 640
- Dalle Carceri, *see* Carintana, Narzotto, Ravano; *see also* Boniface, Felicia, Gilbert, Grapella, William I, William II of Verona
- Dalmatia, 131, 138, 139, 146, 167, 168, 173, 387; duke of, *see* Berthold IV
- Dalmatz of Creixell, Aragonese captain, 313
- Damala, 241; barons of, *see* William de la Roche, James de la Roche, Reginald de la Roche
- Damascus: under Aiyūbids 1174-1260: 38, 71, 390, 391, 398, 401, 402, 449, 453, 455, 473, 474, 479, 505, 506, 561, 564, 567, 675, 695-699, 701, 702, 704-713, 737, 741; under Mamluks after 1260: 577, 578, 582, 595, 656, 745-751, 754, 755; atabeg of, 662; Mongols at, 572, 573, 653, 714, 717, 745, 761; rulers of, *see* Aiyūbids; troops from, 67, 542, 561-563, 596, 708, 709, 711
- Damietta, 30, 34, 37, 389, 448, 471, 697, 742, 747; fifth crusade at, 335, 396-439, 434-439, 442, 452, 456, 539-541, 609, 610, 698-701, 703, 760; crusade of 1249 at, 226, 245, 258, 494-498, 501-504, 506, 515, 516, 615, 627, 711, 712, 741, 761; archbishops of, 420, *and see* Giles
- Dammartin (-en-Goële), *see* Reginald
- Dampierre, (Le-Vieil-), *see* Guy
- Dampierre (-le-Château), *see* Guy, Reginald
- Dandolo, *see* Enrico, Marino, Renier
- Dānishmendids, Turkoman dynasty at Sebastia 1063-1174: 132, 133, 140, 636, 676-681, 727, *and see* Malik-Ghāzi 1097-1105?, Gümüshtigin Ghāzi 1105?-c. 1134, Muḥammad c. 1134-1140, Yaghī-Basan 1140-1164; *see also* 'Ain-ad-Daulah, Dhū-l-Qarnain, Dhū-n-Nūn
- Danube river, 92, 131, 220; island in, 94; region north of, 125
- Daphne, 241, 252, 269
- Daphnusia, 231
- Dara, 704
- Darbsāk, 550, 649; *see also* Amanus mountains, castles of
- Dardanelles, 101-103, 110, 116, 177, 205, 219, 759
- Dartmouth, 50, 395
- Darum, 79, 82, 83, 523, 713
- Daulia, bishopric of, 252
- Daun, *see* Wierich
- David II ("the Restorer"), king of Georgia 1089-1125: 664
- David, Orthodox patriarch of Antioch c. 1242-after 1247: 566
- David Comnenus, grandson of Andronicus I; leader at Trebizond (d. 1214), 200, 204-206, 210
- De la Roches, Burgundian dynasty at Athens 1205-1308: 269, *and see* Othon 1205-1225, Guy I 1225-1263, John 1263-1280, William 1280-1287, Guy II 1287-

- 1308; *see also* Alice, Bonne, Isabel, James, Reginald, William
- Deabolis, *see* Devol
- Dead Sea, 82
- Delhi, slave kings of, 668, 672
- Delos, 192
- Delphi, 238
- Delta, *see* Nile, delta of; maps of, 486
- Demetrius, 257, 271
- Demetrius Angelus Comnenus, son of Theodore of Epirus; despot of Thessalonica 1244-1246: 225
- Demetrius Chomatianus, Orthodox archbishop of Ochrida (in 1224), 214
- Demetrius of Montferrat, son of Boniface II and Margaret; king of Thessalonica 1209-1224 (d. 1227), 206, 207, 212, 214; wife of, *see* Bonne de la Roche
- Demosiakoi* (Greek, state *paroikoi*), 143
- Demotica, 105, 106, 192, 203, 204, 217
- Denizli, 681
- Denmark: axes from, 615; clergy of, 349; crusaders from, 50, 51, 65; mercenaries from, 179
- Derby, earl of, 50
- Devol, treaty of (1108), 127, 132
- Devon, 54; earl of, 483 note
- Dgha Ṭasil (Basil "the Younger"), adopted son of Kogh Ṭasil; Armenian lord of Kesoun 1112-1116: 632, 635
- Dhū-l-Qarnain, son of 'Ain-ad-Daulah; Dānīshmendīd emir at Melitene 1152-1162: 678
- Dhū-n-Nūn, 'Imād-ad-Dīn, son of Muḥammad; Dānīshmendīd emir in Cappadocia 1140-1164 (d. 1174), 677-679
- Dicetum, *see* Ralph de Diceto
- Diego (of Acebes), bishop of Osma 1201-1207: 283
- Dietpold (of Bergen), bishop of Passau 1172-1190: 92, 93, 102, 104, 106, 115
- Dietrich, count of Wied 1158-1189: 92, 105
- Dietrich I, margrave of Meissen 1195-1221: 120
- Dietz, *see* Henry
- Dieudamour, 611-613; *see also* Saint Hilarion
- Dijon, council of (1198), 155, 156
- Dikran, Armenian lord of Bṛagana (d. after 1198), 639
- Dillingen, count of, *see* Adalbert
- Dimas, 21
- Dimatra, 261
- Dinan, lord of, 469
- Dionysius, treasurer of Hungary, 392
- Divrighi, 690
- Diyār-Bakr, 673, 684, 691, 693, 700-704
- Diyār-Muḍar, 673, 706
- Dodecanese, 192
- Dollnstein, count of, *see* Gebhard
- Dome of the Rock (Qubbat aṣ-Ṣakhrāh), at Jerusalem, 455, 709
- Dominic (?), archbishop of Brindisi 1203?-c. 1216: 335
- Dominic, assistant to bishop Diego of Osma, 283
- Dominicans, order, 341, 465, 467; individual friars, 218, 219, 281, 494 note, 566, 626, 627, 722
- Domokos, 238, 271
- Donzi, *see* Hervey
- Dordogne river, 303
- Dornberg, count of, *see* Conrad
- Dorset, 54
- Dorylaeum, 681
- Dositheus, Orthodox patriarch of Jerusalem 1669-1707: 626 note
- Doubs river, 335
- Dramelay, *see* Guy
- Dreux: count of, *see* Robert II; house of, 470, *and see* Henry, Peter, Philip
- Dreux of Beaumont (-sur-Oise), marshal of Sicily (in 1271), 256, 257
- Dreux of Mello, French commander, 69
- Dreux of Mello, lord of Loches and Dinan, 469
- Dubais, Mazyadīd ruler of Hilla 1107-1134 (d. 1135), 663
- Ducas, *see* Alexius V, John, John III, Michael I, Theodore; *see also* Euphrosyne, Irene Ducaena
- Duluk, 641
- Dunstable, 473 note
- Durand (Chapuis) of Le Puy, carpenter and visionary, 329
- Durazzo, 3, 36, 118, 146, 176, 212, 240; Angevins at, 258, 260, 268, 273, 367
- Durham, bishop of, 54
- Dzedz, 639 note
- Dzovḡk, monastery, 641
- EAunes, abbey, abbot of, 296 note
- Ebersheim, 333, 335
- Écry, 158, 185, 759
- Edessa, city, 11, 134, 616, 632, 635, 638, 708, *and see* Matthew; lord of, 632, 634
- Edessa, county, 126, 678; counts of, *see* Baldwin I 1098-1100, Baldwin II 1100-1118, Joscelin I 1119-1131, Joscelin II 1131-1150; regents of, *see* Richard of the Principate 1104-1108, Beatrice 1150-1150
- Edmund Plantagenet, son of Henry III of England; count of Lancaster, titular king of Sicily 1255-1259 (d. 1296), 360, 362, 582
- Edward I ("Longshanks"), son of Henry III; as crusader 1270-1272: 510, 517, 518, 582-584, 615, 616, 762; Plantagenet king of England 1272-1307: 374, 518, 586, 595, 654, 722; wife of, *see* Eleanor of Castile
- Egbert (of Andechs), son of Berthold IV of Meran; bishop of Bamberg 1203-1237: 389
- Egypt, 19, 76, 78, 79, 82, 83, 106, 449, 453, 505-508, 514, 564, 567, 574, 575, 595, 610, 654, 656, 674, 678, 695, 697, 700,

- 704, 707, 708, 711, 718, 719, 735, 737, 738, 740-751, 753-755, 757; attacks on, xvii, 30, 34, 140, 163, 169, 180, 245, 389, 396-428, 430, 432, 444, 462, 471-473, 477, 493-504, 512, 516, 539, 566, 607, 609, 698, 706, 713, 760, 761; ships from, 53, 531, 532, 564, 565, 581, 593; sultans of, *see* Aiyūbids (1174-1252), Mamluks (1250-1390); trade with, 22, 23, 27, 161, 592, 593, 682, 730; troops from, 67, 476, 479, 480, 489, 553, 562-565, 573, 574, 576, 596, 655, 657, 674, 687, 697, 698, 700, 705, 706, 709-711, 713, 739, 756, 761, and *see* Mamluks
- Elbe river, 121
- Eleanor, sister of Peter II of Aragon; 5th wife of Raymond VI of Toulouse, 300 note, 307
- Eleanor of Aquitaine, 1st wife of Louis VII of France 1137-1152, wife of Henry II of England 1152-1189 (d. 1204), 12, 15, 61, 159
- Eleanor of Castile, granddaughter of Alfonso IX; 1st wife of Edward I of England 1254-1290: 583 note
- Eleusis, 241
- Eleutheroi* or *francomati* (Greek, freemen), 622
- Elias (Peleti), patriarch of Jerusalem 1279-c. 1287: 590
- Elis, 248, 253, 254, 258, 267, 272
- Elizabeth (of Chappes), wife of Geoffrey I of Achaea 1210-1218: 240
- Ely, bishop of, 54, 79
- Embracos, Genoese family at Jubail 1109-1298?: 569, 570, 587, and *see* Hugh III 1184-1186, Guy I 1186-1241, Henry 1241-c. 1271, Guy II c. 1271-1282, Peter 1282-c. 1298; *see also* Baldwin, Bartholomew, Bertrand, John, William
- Embrun, 364
- Emeric I, son of Bela III and Agnes; king of Hungary 1196-1204: 173, 175, 189, 190, 387; wife of, *see* Constance of Aragon
- Engelbert I, count of Berg 1166-1189: 92
- Engelhard, bishop of Naumburg and Zeitz 1207-1242: 389
- England, 10, 49, 53-55, 61, 79, 82, 89, 91, 120, 156, 221, 362, 365, 384, 431, 479, 482, 533, 583, 621; clergy in, 163, 349, 352, 357, 362, 373, 465, 510; crusaders from, on third crusade, 47, 50, 56, 58-60, 63, 65, 67, 69, 74, 85, 114-116, 602, 792; on fourth crusade, 164 note; on fifth crusade, 402, 415, 417; on crusade of Frederick II, 444, 445, 452, 458, 542; on crusade of 1239-1241: 466, 472, 481, 483; on crusade of 1249-1250: 490, 499; on crusade of prince Edward, 510, 517, 582, 584; at defense of Acre, 595-597; great seal of, 62; kings of, *see* Plantagenets; mercenaries from, 179, 200
- Enguerrand of Boves, French baron, 175
- Enkleistra, monastery, 601, 626
- Enos, 105
- Enrico Dandolo, doge of Venice c. 1193-1205: 162, 163, 167-169, 173; on fourth crusade, 151, 174-176, 178-180, 182-185, 760; at Constantinople 1204-1205: 183, 184, 189, 190, 193, 202, 203
- Eon de l'Étoile, fanatic in Brittany (d. 1148), 328
- Ephraim, hills, 73
- Epirus, 191, 193, 235; Angevins in, 256-258, 263, 265-269, 273; despoina of, *see* Anna Cantacuzena; despots of, *see* Michael I 1204-1214, Theodore 1214-1230, Michael II 1236-1271, Nicephorus 1271-1296, Thomas 1296-1318; despotate of, 151, 201, 208, 226-228, 266-269, 273, 367; troops from, 211, 228, 266
- Epistola caelestis* (Latin, letter from heaven), 329, 341
- Erard II, count of Brienne 1161?-1189: 50, 51
- Eretna, 'Alā'-ad-Dīn, Mongol emir at Sebastia 1335-1352: 730
- Erfurt, 340
- Eric Läspe, king of Sweden 1223-1250: 349
- Erivan, *see* Mkhitar of Ayrvank
- Erlau, bishop of, 389
- Ernoul, French chronicler (d. after 1229), 158, 391, 420, 421, 448
- Erymanthus, stream, 269
- Erzerum, 664, 665, 682, 683, 691, 730; lord of, 673, 681
- Erzinjan, 673, 682, 683, 691, 703
- Esaias, Orthodox archbishop of Cyprus c. 1205-c. 1220: 626 note
- Eschiva of Ibelin, niece of Balian II; 1st wife of Aimery of Lusignan (d. c. 1196), 604, 605
- Eschiva of Ibelin, daughter of John II and Alice; wife of Humphrey of Montfort 1269-1284, wife of Guy "of Lusignan" c. 1285-1303, lady of Beirut 1282-1291, lady of Laphithos (d. 1309), 269, 580, 584, 588, 589
- Eschiva of Montbéliard, daughter of Walter and Burgundia; wife of Balian III of Ibelin (after 1230), 560
- Esdraelon, plain, 390
- Essex, earl of, 49
- Este, family, 363
- Estonians, Finnic people, 122
- Étampes, 12, 40
- Euboea: under Greeks to 1205: 13, 29, 177, 191, 202, 235, 236, 760; under Franks 1205-1276?: 208, 229, 232, 238-240, 242, 243, 245, 246, 248, 249, 253, 256, 257, 263; under Greeks after 1276?: 257-259, 263, 272
- Eudocia Angelina, daughter of Alexius III; wife of Stephen I of Serbia (to 1202), wife of Alexius V Ducas 1202-1204, wife of Leo Sgourus 1204-1207: 148, 149, 182 note
- Eudocia Lascaris, daughter of Theodore I;

- wife of Anseau of Cahieu (after 1227), 214, 226
- Eugenius III (Peter Bernardo), pope 1145–1153: 11, 12, 15, 16, 27, 136, 328
- Eugenius, Sicilian admiral, possibly "Hugo Falcandus" (d. c. 1203), 3 note
- Euphemia (Femyë), daughter of Hetoum I; wife of Julian of Sidon (after c. 1252), 652 note
- Euphrates river, 641, 685, 696, 725, 755; crossings of, 582, 657, 708, 714, 745, 749; region east of, 673, 674, 679, 683, 684, 735; region west of, 630, 678, 679, 726
- Euphrosyne Ducaena, wife of Alexius III Angelus (d. 1215), 176, 207
- Europe, map of central, 2; map of western, 44
- Eurotas river, 253
- Eustace, (illegitimate?) son of Baldwin V of Hainault; commander of Latin forces, 208–210; wife of, 208
- Eustorgue of Montaigu (-sur-Champeix), brother of Garin; Latin archbishop of Nicosia c. 1215–1250: 389, 413 note, 609, 615, 625–627
- Euthymius, Orthodox patriarch of Antioch (before 1260–after 1264), 566, 572, 575
- Évreux, bishop of, 58, 63
- Exeter, bishop of, 445, 542
- Ezzelino III of Romano, tyrant of Padua 1237–1256, of Verona 1237–1259: 363
- al-Fāḍil, qadi at Cairo, 600 note
- Faenza, bishop of, *see* Roland
- Fagiano, *see* Hugh
- al-Fā'iz Ibrāhīm, son of al-'Ādil I Saif-ad-Dīn (d. 1220), 408
- Fakhr-ad-Dīn 'Alī, vizir of Selchūkids, 727, 728
- Fakhr-ad-Dīn ibn-ash-Shaikh; Egyptian emir (d. 1250), 449, 452–454, 498, 499, 710, 711, 739
- Falkenstein, count of, *see* Kuno
- Famagusta, 64, 601, 608, 612, 613, 623–625
- Fanjeaux, 294 note, 300
- Fārīskūr, 410, 412–414, 418, 424, 712, 739, 740
- Farrūkh-Shāh Dā'ūd, 'Izz-ad-Dīn, nephew of Saladin; Aiyūbid governor of Damascus 1178–1183: 693
- Fars, 662, 663, 672
- Fāṭimids, Arab caliphal dynasty in Tunisia 909–972 and Egypt 969–1171: 17, 18, 19 note, 27 note, 30, 35, 665, *and see* al-Mu'izz 953–975, al-Mustanshir 1036–1094, al-Ḥāfiz 1130–1149
- Fauquembergue, family, 244
- Felicia (dalle Carceri), daughter of William I of Verona; wife of Narzotto dalle Carceri (to 1264), wife of Licario: 256
- Ferdinand III, king of Castile 1217–1252, of Leon 1230–1252: 216
- Ferentino, 438, 440, 447
- Ferrara, 363; council of (1438–1442), 232, 233
- Ferro, *see* Angelo, John
- Feuchtwangen, *see* Conrad
- Fifth crusade (1217–1221), 216, 297, 760; preparations, 300, 308, 378–388, 432, 434, 537, 538, 608, 609; Syrian phase, 388–396, 538, 539, 605, 609, 698; Egyptian phase, 335, 397–428, 434–437, 449, 452, 496, 497, 539–541, 609, 610, 698–700; map, 486
- Filangieri, *see* Henry, Lothair, Marino, Richard
- First crusade (1096–1099), 5, 6, 125, 134, 159, 326, 464, 600, 631–634, 664, 677
- Fivelgo, *see* Hayo
- Flanders, 68, 70, 204, 221, 341, 360, 381; countesses of, *see* Margaret (I) of Alsace, Margaret II; counts of, *see* Philip (I) of Alsace, Baldwin (VIII), Baldwin (IX), Guy; crusaders from, 47, 50, 65, 115, 175, 582, *and see under* Low Countries; seneschal of, *see* Hellin
- Flemings, Flemish, *see* Flanders
- Florence, *see* Walter; bankers from, 273; council of Ferrara– (1438–1442), 232, 233
- Florent (or Floris) III, count of Holland 1157–1190: 92, 93, 106, 115
- Florent of Hainault, brother of count John II; prince of Achaea 1289–1297: 262–266, 268, 272–274, 762; wife of, *see* Isabel of Villehardouin
- Florent of Varennes, French admiral, 511
- Foggia, 362, 442, 547
- Foix, 293; castle of, 306, 307, 312; counts of, *see* Raymond Roger, Roger Bernard; county of, 294, 298, 303, 311, 315, 320
- Fontfroide, abbey, 283
- Forcalquier, count of, 259
- Forez, count of, 469
- Fors, *see* William
- Fougères, lord of, 469
- Fourth crusade (1202–1204), xv, 37, 119, 138, 144, 209, 289, 533; preparations, 154–167, 347, 608, 759; diversion, 150, 167–173, 325, 381, 531, 608; at Zara, 173–176, 760; at Constantinople, 150, 151, 177–185, 760; results, xvii, 38, 88, 151, 185, 233, 377, 531, 535, 608, 682; map of, 186
- France, 5, 11, 12, 16, 48, 49, 55, 57, 89, 137, 155, 157, 195, 204, 212, 219, 222, 239, 240, 245–247, 250, 251, 255, 270, 321, 322, 327, 329, 341, 351, 363, 364, 371, 378, 381, 384, 385, 439, 465, 467, 470, 483, 484, 490, 503–505, 508–510, 513, 517, 518, 542, 554, 559, 571, 713, 761; clergy of, 155, 156, 164, 283, 299, 306, 313, 314, 316, 319, 348, 349, 352, 357, 365, 371–375, 380, 490, 491, 504, 510; crusaders from, 121, 224, 252, 326, 508, 537, 575, 576, 580, 590, 592, 596; on third crusade, 47, 50, 60, 65, 70, 74, 75, 78–83,

- 85, 114, 116, 522; on fourth crusade, 88, 150, 157 note, 159, 162, 163, 167, 174, 178, 179, 181, 185, 198, 207, 232, 238, 759, 760; on children's crusade, 331-333, 337, 760; on political crusades, 287, 346, 350, 372; on fifth crusade, 380, 385, 386, 402, 409, 415, 417, 420, 427; on crusade of Frederick II, 440, 448, 542; on crusade of 1239-1241: 219, 243, 471, 482, 484; on crusades of Louis IX: 244, 490, 493, 581, 614, 742, 761, 762; kings of, *see* Capetians; peers of, 54, 469; regents of, *see* Adela and William, archbishop of Rheims (1190-1191), Blanche of Castile (1226-1236, 1248-1252); map of central, 276
- Francis of Assisi, founder of Franciscan order (1209, d. 1226), 378 note, 415, 416
- Franciscans, order, 198, 226, 415, 544, 566, 656 note; individual friars, 218-220, 627, 722
- Frangipani, family, 450
- Frankfurt (am Main), 434, 770
- Franks, 11, 144, 724; in Africa, 22, 23; in Cyprus, 599-629; in Greece, 235-274, 621, 761, 762; in Syria, 34, 35, 46, 522-598, 663, 667, 674-678, 682, 683, 694, 697, 709, 713, 718, 719, 721, 727, 761, 762, plate 2B; *see also* Latins
- Frederick I, count of Abenberg (in 1189), 92, 105
- Frederick I ("Barbarossa"), nephew of Conrad III; Hohenstaufen emperor of Germany 1152 (crowned 1155)-1190: 32, 33, 47, 282, 345, 346, 759; and Byzantines (to 1188), 15 note, 88, 90, 130, 136-138, 140, 141; on third crusade, frontispiece, xvii, 49, 55, 57, 88-104, 107-121, 146-148, 185, 645, 646, 680, 682, 759
- Frederick, son of Frederick I; Hohenstaufen duke of Swabia and Alsace 1169-1191: 49, 53, 65, 91-93, 96, 100, 102, 105, 109-116, 645
- Frederick II, son of Henry VI and Constance: 117; Hohenstaufen emperor of Germany and Sicily 1211 (crowned 1220)-1250: xviii, 337, 338, 463, 488, 541, 565, 760, 761; and papacy, 216, 221, 224, 225, 227, 346, 348-359, 429-442, 445-447, 450, 461, 462, 465, 490; and fifth crusade, 382, 384, 395, 419, 423, 427, 434-437; and Albigensian crusade, 317 note, 318, 322, 323; and Latin empire, 221, 224, 226, 228; king of Jerusalem 1225-1228: xvii, 42, 442-451, 464, 542, 543, 606, 610, 701, 760; regent 1228-1243: 451-462, 464, 467-469, 471-473, 480-484, 489, 543-553, 557-560, 561 note, 604-606, 610-614, 618-620, 702, 705, 706, 760, 761; wives of, *see* Constance of Aragon, Isabel of Brienne, Isabel (Plantagenet)
- Frederick I of Babenberg, son of Leopold V; duke of Austria 1194-1198: 120
- Frederick of Berg, advocate of Passau and Melk (d. 1190), 93, 100, 105, 106, 115
- Frederick of Hausen, minnesinger (d. 1190), 111
- Freidank, Swabian poet and crusader, 454, 456, 462
- Freising, bishop of, 11
- Frisia, 330, 381; crusaders from, 50, 51, 65, 115, 357, 394, 395, 399-402, 407, 409, 444; *see also* Low Countries
- al-Fūlah, 390
- Fulda, 432
- Fulk (of Marseilles), bishop of Toulouse 1205-1231: 277 note, 296, 299, 306, 312
- Fulk, son-in-law of Baldwin II of Jerusalem; count (V) of Anjou 1109-1129, king of Jerusalem 1131-1143: 10, 134, 636
- Fulk of Neuilly, priest (d. 1202), 157, 158, 166
- Fustat, 35, 411
- Futūwah* (Arabic, magnanimity), 666, 688
- Fūwah, 531
- Gabadonia, 639
- Gaban, 637
- Gabes, 20, 24, 25, 27 note
- Gabes, Gulf of, 22
- Gabriel (Khōril), Armenian lord of Melitene (to 1103), 632
- Gagik (East Armenian), Bagratid king of Greater Armenia (d. 1071), 633, 635
- Gaikhathu, son of Abagha; Il-khan of Persia 1291-1295: 755
- Galata, 178, 229
- Galeran, bishop of Beirut (before 1233-after 1245), 548 note
- Galeran of Ivry, seneschal of Sicily, baillie of Achaea 1278-1280: 259, 274
- Galicia, coast of, 395
- Galilee, 479, 480, 489, 531, 537, 558, 561, 564, 565, 573, 574, 576, 580, 745
- Gallipoli, 108, 109, 191, 215, 219, 270
- Ganges river, valley of, 668
- Ganja, 633, *and see* Nizāmī
- Gardiki, 259; lord of, 271
- Gardolph (of Harpke), bishop of Halberstadt 1193-1201: 120
- Gargar, lord of, 632, 636
- Garin, Latin archbishop of Verissa 1207-1210, of Thessalonica 1210-1224: 214
- Garin fitz Gerald, Norman baron, 58
- Garin of Montaigu (-sur-Champeix), master of the Hospital 1207-1227: 383, 389, 392, 397, 413 note, 425, 438, 541, 609, 625
- Garmirleḡ hills, 637
- Garnier, *see* Grenier
- Garonne river, 287 note, 300, 302, 303, 312, 315; region of, 295
- Gascony, 315; soldiers from, 302, 312, 510
- Gasmouloi* (Greek, half-breeds), 252, 253
- Gaston, *see* Baghrās; *see also* Adam
- Gaston VI, viscount of Béarn 1173-1215, count of Bigorre 1196-1215: 297-299

- Gaston VII, great-nephew of Gaston VI; viscount of Béarn 1229-1290: 510
- Gata, Cape, 612
- Gaza, 479, 480, 506, 523, 553, 562, 573, 709, 710, 713, 742, 745; battle (1239), 473 note, 475-477, 479, 484, 552, 761; battle (1244), 489, 550, 563, 674, 709, 761, *and see* Harbiyah
- Gebhard II, count of Dollnstein (in 1189), 92, 93
- Gelasius II (John Coniulo), pope 1118-1119: 132
- Gelnhausen, 770; diet at (1195), 118, 119
- Genghis Khan (Temüjin), Great Khan of the Mongols 1206-1227: 421, 672, 716, 717, 748
- Genoa, 57, 58, 165, 230, 309, 334, 335, 402, 471, 591, 609, 760; archbishop of, 609; client city of, 21; crusaders from, 65, 68, 409, 503, 516; government of, 8, 9, 104, 125, 132, 138, 155, 161, 165, 170, 189, 190, 238, 348, 368, 492, 512, 549, 568, 570, 591, 592, 722, 751; individuals from, 291, 338, 354, 416, 492, 569; merchants from, 572; in Africa: 27 note; in Byzantine empire: 132, 138, 162, 230, 572; in Cilicia: 650; in Cyprus: 623; in Frankish Greece: 243, 251; in Sicily: 436; in Syria: 230, 381, 452, 534, 548, 553, 559, 560, 568-570, 574, 579, 582, 585, 588, 590-593, 602, 615; ships from, 53, 56, 57, 96, 161, 219, 226, 230, 243, 246, 254, 263, 353, 492, 511, 514, 515, 549, 569, 592, 613, 620, 623, 723; trade with, 524
- Genua, 215
- Geoffrey, bishop of Carpentras (to 1211?), 286
- Geoffrey III, son of Rotrou III; count of Perche 1191-1202: 159, 164
- Geoffrey of Argentan, English crusader, 466
- Geoffrey of Briel, nephew of William II of Achaea; baron of Karytaina 1255-1275: 245, 246, 258; wife of, *see* Isabel de la Roche
- Geoffrey of Donjon, master of the Hospital 1193-1202: 525, 533
- Geoffrey of Lusignan, son of Hugh VIII; count of Jaffa 1191-1193 (d. after 1197), 48, 52, 63, 65, 68, 71
- Geoffrey of Sargines, seneschal of Jerusalem 1254?-1269, bailie 1259-1263: 508, 567, 569-571, 574-576, 579
- Geoffrey of Tournai, baron of Kalavryta 1260-1263 (titular to 1283), 259
- Geoffrey of Villehardouin, marshal of Champagne, chronicler (d. c. 1213), 150, 158-160, 164, 166-172, 174, 175, 202, 237
- Geoffrey I of Villehardouin, nephew of Geoffrey the chronicler; prince of Achaea 1209-c. 1229: 202, 207, 208, 237, 239-242, 244, 248, 760, 761; wife of, *see* Elizabeth (of Chappes)
- Geoffrey II of Villehardouin, son of Geoffrey I; prince of Achaea c. 1229-1246: 213, 219, 222, 240, 242-244, 761; wife of, *see* Agnes of Courtenay
- Geoffrey Plantagenet, illegitimate son of Henry II of England; archbishop of York 1191-1212: 79
- George (Georg: East Armenian), Armenian anti-catholicus, 633
- George, son of Dietrich; count of Wied 1189-1218?: 395
- George I, tsar of Bulgaria 1280-1292 (d. 1295), 260
- George Ghisi, grandson of Andrew; lord of Tenos 1303-1311: 271
- George of Antioch, Sicilian admiral 1126-c. 1150: xviii, 14, 19, 21-24, 26, 29
- Georgia, 652, 663-665, 672, 680, 682, 683, 696; king of, *see* David II 1089-1125; queen of, *see* Tamar 1184-1212; troops from, 751, 760
- Geraki, barony of, 250, 253, 258
- Gerald (of Malemort), archbishop of Bordeaux 1227-1261: 323
- Gerald (of Lausanne), bishop of Valence 1220-1225, patriarch of Jerusalem 1225-1239: 446, 447, 451, 452, 455-462, 545, 547, 702 note
- Geralda, sister of Aimery of Montréal; countess of Lavaur (d. 1211), 293
- Gerard (of La Barthe), archbishop of Auch 1173-1192: 56
- Gerard of Malberg, master of the Teutonic Knights 1241-1244: 562
- Gerard of Remy, French knight, 264
- Gerard of Ridefort, master of the Temple 1185-1189: 45, 50
- Germanus, Orthodox patriarch at Nicaea 1222-1240: 218, 626, 627
- Germanus Pesimandrus, Orthodox archbishop of Cyprus c. 1254-after 1260: 627, 628
- Germany, 10, 16 note, 89-91, 115-119, 132, 133, 139, 155, 166, 327, 330, 345, 352, 355-360, 364, 372, 373, 378, 381, 431, 433, 435, 439, 450, 490, 610, 717; clergy of, 164, 353, 440; crusaders from, on second crusade, 90; on third crusade, 50, 65, 88, 90-94, 97-116, 148, 645, 680, 759; on crusade of 1197: 118-122, 529, 530, 608, 695, 759; on fourth crusade, 167, 184, 185, 238; on children's crusade, 331-334, 337, 760; on fifth crusade, 385, 386, 388, 394, 395, 399, 400, 407, 409, 417, 427, 432, 434; on political crusades, 350; with Frederick II, 444, 446-448, 450, 452, 456, 458, 461, 542; emperors of, 8, 29, 279, *and see* Henry IV 1056-1106, Henry V 1106-1125, Lothair II 1125-1137, Frederick I 1152-1190, Henry VI 1190-1197, Otto IV 1201-1211, Frederick II 1211-1250, Conrad IV 1250-1254, *and* Holy Roman empire; kings in, *see* Conrad III 1138-1152, Philip (of Swabia) 1197-1208, Henry VII 1220-1232, Henry Raspe

- 1246-1247, William (of Holland) 1247-1256; magnates of, 348, 354, 430, 461; *see also* Alamannia
- Germiyān, Turkoman state, 729
- Gerona, 372
- Gertrude (of Andechs), daughter of Berthold IV of Meran; 1st wife of Andrew II of Hungary *c.* 1205-1213: 388 note
- Gervase (of Chichester), abbot (of St. Just of Thenailles), general of Premonstratensians 1210-1220, bishop of Séez 1220-1228: 384-386
- Gervase, archbishop of Heraclea, Latin patriarch of Constantinople 1215-1219: 198
- Gévaudan, 318
- Ghazan ("Mahmūd"), son of Arghun; Ilkhan of Persia 1295-1304: 656, 657, 720-722
- Ghaznah, 668, 717
- Ghaznavids, Turkish dynasty in Afghanistan and India 962-1186: 668, 669, 671
- Ghibellines, pro-Hohenstaufen faction, 345, 365, 545, 548
- Ghiur, *see* Andrew, George, Jeremiah
- Ghūr, 668
- Ghūrīds, Afghan dynasty in Persia and Afghanistan 1149-1215: 668, 671, 672
- al-Ghūṭāh, 710
- Gianitsa, 264
- Gibelcar, *see* 'Akkār; *see also* Isabel
- Gibelet, *see* Jubail; *see also* William
- Gibraltar, Strait of, 396
- Giguer, 650
- Gilbert Horal (or Roral), master of the Temple 1193-*c.* 1198: 525
- Gilbert Marshal, earl of Pembroke 1234-1241: 482, 483
- Gilbert (dalle Carceri) of Verona, son of William I; triarch of central Euboea 1275-1279: 256, 257, 259
- Giles, bishop of Damietta 1249-1254, archbishop of Tyre 1254-*c.* 1265: 373
- Gisors, 48
- Glarentsa, 249, 251, 266, 273; mint of, 259
- Gloucester, countess of, 66; earldom of, 54
- Gnostics, early Christian sect, 280, 329 note
- Gobidaṛa, 633
- Godfrey, bishop of Langres *c.* 1140-1164: 12
- Godfrey (of Spitzenberg, count of Helfenstein), bishop of Würzburg 1184-1190: 90-93, 105, 115
- Godfrey III, duke of Lower Lorraine and count of Louvain 1142-1190: 93
- Godfrey of Bouillon, brother of Baldwin I of Jerusalem; advocate of the Holy Sepulcher 1099-1100: 185
- Godfrey of Wiesenbach, knight from Franconian Rhineland, 91, 111, 112
- Gök river, 633
- Gökböri, Muẓaffar-ad-Dīn, emir of Irbil *c.* 1191-*c.* 1233 (d. 1242), 673, 700, 701
- Golden Horde, Mongol-Turkish force, 575, 719, 720, 723, 726, 748, 751; rulers of, *see* Batu Khan 1243-1256, Berke Khan 1256-1266; *see also* Kipchaks
- Golden Horn, 151, 178-180, 231
- Gonesse, *see* Philip of Lagonesse
- Good Hope, Cape of, 735
- Gournay (-en-Bray), *see* Hugh
- Göyük, son of Ögö dai; Great Khan of the Mongols 1246-1248: 507, 615, 652, 722
- Gozo, 21
- Gradenigo, *see* Marco, Paul
- Graditz (Gradets), 106
- Grailly, *see* John
- Gran, 94; archbishop of, 387
- Grandison, *see* Otto
- Grandpré, count of, 469
- Grapella (dalle Carceri) of Verona, nephew of William I; triarch of northern Euboea 1255-1264: 245
- Gratian, Francis, compiler of canon law (*c.* 1140), 345, 347
- Graville (-Sainte Honorine), lord of, 469
- Greece, before 1203: 5, 9, 13, 14, 24, 127; 1203-1311: 175, 206-208, 216, 221, 235-274, 367, 369, 565 note, 579, 621; map of, 234; *see also* Byzantine empire
- Greek church, union with Armenian church, 641, 647, 649; union with Latin church, 171, 180, 181, 196, 228, 232, 369, 509, 584, 762; in Byzantine empire, 128, 130, 143, 144, 147, 173, 218; in Latin empire, 183, 196, 197, 211, 608; in Frankish Greece, 251, 252; in Cyprus, 621-629; in Syria, 127, 566, 578; and Mongols, 573; *see also* Orthodox Christians, Patriarchs
- Greek language, transliteration and nomenclature, xix
- Greeks (or "Byzantines"), 125, 136, 138, 139, 142, 149, 150, 170, 177, 196, 199-204, 209-211, 215, 217-232, 363, 369, 514, 570, 584, 615, 635, 637, 641, 761; of Cyprus, 601-603, 621, 622, 625-628; of Anatolia, 676-678, 681-683, 685, 725; and third crusade, 92, 98, 100, 101, 103, 106-110; and fourth crusade, 174, 176, 180-182, 184, 185; and fifth crusade, 427; in Latin empire, 189, 192, 193, 199, 203, 204, 206-211, 224, 230-232; in Frankish Greece, 237-239, 242, 245, 247, 252-267, 270-274; in Sicily, 5, 19; in Syria, 133, 526, 527, 533, 535, 537, 566; *see also* Orthodox Christians, Byzantine empire, Nicaea
- Gregory III (Bahlavouni), Armenian catholicus 1133-1166: 641, 642
- Gregory IV Dgha, nephew of Gregory III; Armenian catholicus 1173-1193: 645
- Gregory VI Abirad, nephew of Gregory III; Armenian catholicus 1194-1203: 529, 647, 648
- Gregory VII, Armenian catholicus 1292-1307: 657, 658
- Gregory VII (Hildebrand), pope 1073-1085: 345

- Gregory VIII (Albert di Morra), pope 1187-1187: 89
- Gregory IX (Ugolino de' Conti de Segni), cousin of Innocent III; pope 1227-1241: 319, 322, 336, 361, 547, 623, 626, 627, 760, and Latin empire, 198, 216, 217, 219-222, 243, 466-468, 482; and Frederick II, 216, 221, 348-354, 430, 435, 442, 443, 445-448, 450-452, 455-458, 460-462, 465, 467-469, 482, 543, 551, 611, 760, 761; and crusade of 1239: 219, 243, 463, 465-468, 470, 482, 483; cousin of, 565
- Gregory X (Theobald Visconti, archdeacon of Liège), pope 1271-1276: 368, 369, 583, 584, 762
- Gregory of Montelongo, papal legate in Lombardy (d. 1269), 355
- Grenier, *see* Reginald, Balian, Julian
- Gritsena, barony of, 250
- Guelders, count of, 50, 51, 65, 115
- Guelfs, anti-Hohenstaufen faction, 545, 551, 553, 610, and *see* Welfs
- Guigues, count of Forez 1203-1241, of Nevers 1226-1241: 469, 481
- Guines, 331
- Guiscard, *see* Robert Guiscard
- Gümüşhtigin Ghāzi, son of Malik-Ghāzi; Dānishmendid ruler 1105?-c. 1134: 133, 636, 676, 677
- Guy, abbot of Les Vaux-de-Cernay, bishop of Carcassonne 1211-1223: 174, 277 note
- Guy, nephew of Matthew of Montmorency; castellan of Coucy, 158 note, 160
- Guy, Cistercian monk, papal commissioner, 283
- Guy II, count of Auvergne 1195-1224, of Rodez 1208-1209: 287 note
- Guy (of Dampierre-le-Château), son of Margaret II; co-count of Flanders 1251-1279, count 1279-1304, count of Namur 1263-1304: 510
- Guy de Charpigny of Lille, baron of Vostitsa 1278-1295, bailie of Achaia 1289-1289: 259, 261, 264
- Guy I de la Roche, nephew of Othon; lord of half of Thebes, lord of Athens 1225-1263: 232, 241-247, 269
- Guy II de la Roche, son of William; duke of Athens 1287-1308, bailie of Achaia 1307-1308: 261, 263-267, 269, 271, 273; wife of, *see* Mahaut of Hainault
- Guy I Embriaco, son of Hugh III; lord of Jubail 1186-1187, 1197-1241: 412, 544, 700
- Guy II Embriaco, son of Henry; lord of Jubail c. 1271-1282: 587, 588
- Guy of (Le-Vieil-)Dampierre, knight from Champagne, 50, 51
- Guy of Dramelay, baron of Chalandritsa 1278-1288, bailie of Achaia 1282-1285: 259, 261
- Guy of Ibelin, son of John I; constable of Cyprus (in 1249), 560, 615
- Guy of Ibelin, son of John, of Jaffa; count of Jaffa 1266-1268 (titular 1268-1304), 577
- Guy of Ibelin, son of seneschal Baldwin, 652 note; wife of, *see* Maria (Heṭoumid)
- Guy of Lévis, lord of Mirepoix, 294 note, 320
- Guy of Lucy, lord of Puylaurens, 294 note
- Guy of Lusignan, son of Hugh VIII; king of Jerusalem 1186-1190: 45, 46, 48, 50-53, 65, 66, 81, 85, 443, 523; and third crusade, 63-68, 71, 74, 77, 339, 600 note, 601, 759; ruler of Cyprus 1192-1194: 81, 82, 148, 523-525, 602-604, 607, 618, 620, 621, 624, 759; daughters of, 65; wife of, *see* Sibyl (of Jerusalem)
- Guy "of Lusignan", son of Hugh III; constable of Cyprus (d. 1303), 589; wife of, *see* Eschiva of Ibelin
- Guy of Montfort, son of Simon IV; count of Bigorre 1216-1220: 311, 313
- Guy of Montfort, brother of Simon IV; lord of Castres (d. 1229), 294 note, 306, 309-313, 472; wife of, *see* Helvis of Ibelin
- Guy Pallavicini, marquis of Bodonitsa 1204-after 1237: 238, 242
- Haakon V, king of Norway 1217-1263: 490
- Hadrian V (Nicholas Breakspear), pope 1154-1159: 29, 137
- al-Ḥāfiẓ, grandson of al-Mustanṣir; Fātimid caliph at Cairo 1130-1149: 22, 27
- Ḥāfiẓ, Persian poet (d. 1388), 724
- al-Ḥāfiẓ Arslan, son of al-ʿĀdil I Saif-ad-Dīn; Aiyūbid lord of Qal'at Ja'bar 1202-c. 1242: 696
- Hafsa, 106
- Ḥafṣids, Berber dynasty in Tunisia 1230-1574: *see* Muḥammad I 1249-1277
- Hagia Sophia (Greek, holy wisdom), cathedral in Constantinople, under Greeks to 1204: 96, 109, 128, 144, 181, 201; under Latins 1204-1268: 183, 189, 195, 196, 198, 204, 205, 218; under Greeks after 1268: 232
- Haifa, 394, 524, 536, 575, 748, and *see* Reginald; lord of, *see* Pagan
- Haimo (of Briançon), archbishop of Tarentaise 1179-c. 1210: 92, 93, 104
- Hainault, 204, 341, 360, and *see* Florent, Isabel, Yolanda; counts of, 155, 159, 189, 262; crusaders from, 192
- Hajjī Bektash, Turkish mystic (d. after 1330), 732
- al-Ḥākīm, descendant of al-Mustarshid; ʿAbbāsīd "caliph" at Cairo 1262-1302: 747, 754
- Ḥalbah, 576
- Halberstadt, bishops of, *see* Gardolph, Conrad
- Hallermond, count of, 92, 115
- Halmyros, 207, 210, 271
- Hamadan, 670
- Hamah, 67, 547, 693, 696, 700, 703, 705; qadi of, 702; rulers of, *see* Aiyūbids (1174-1284); troops from, 595, 596, 699

- Hameln, 340, 341, 771
- Hammāids, Berber dynasty in Algeria 1014-1152: 17, 19, 25, 28, *and see* al-'Azīz 1105-1121
- Hamo "the Stranger", English crusader (d. 1273), 584; wife of, *see* Isabel of Ibelin
- Hanafites, Moslem legal school, 686
- Hannapes, *see* Nicholas
- Harbiyah, 454; battle (1244), 489, 563-565, 614, 709 note, *and see* Gaza
- Hārim, 640, 641, 643
- Harran, 684
- Hartwig (of Utlede), archbishop of Bremen 1184-1207: 120
- Hasan, son of Khoul Khachig; Armenian in Byzantine service, 633
- al-Ḥasan, son of 'Alī; Zirid emir at Mahdia 1121-1148: 20, 21 note, 22, 24
- Hattin, 771; battle (1187), 45, 46, 52, 85, 164, 390, 415, 428, 452, 522, 564, 600 note, 737, 759, plate 2A
- Hausen, *see* Frederick
- Hauteville, house of, 5, 6, 8 note, 11, 34, 36, 41, *and see* Tancred
- Hayo of Fivelgo, Frisian crusader, 401
- Hebron, 552, 553, 710
- Hejaz, 735
- Helena, daughter of John Asen of Bulgaria and Maria; wife of Theodore II Lascaris (after 1235), 216, 219, 220
- Helena, daughter of Uroš II of Rascia; wife of Bela II of Hungary 1130-1141: 131
- Helena Angelina Comnena, daughter of John I of Neopatras; wife of William de la Roche of Athens 1275-1287, regent of Athens 1287-1296, 2nd wife of Hugh of Brienne 1291-1296 (d. after 1299), 252, 263
- Helena Angelina Comnena, daughter of Michael II of Epirus; 2nd wife of Manfred of Sicily 1259-1266 (d. 1271), 257
- Hellespont, *see* Dardanelles
- Hellin (of Wavrin), seneschal of Flanders, 65
- Helvis of Ibelin, daughter of Balian II; wife of Reginald of Sidon, wife of Guy of Montfort (after 1202), 472, 559, 560
- Henneberg, count of, 92, 115
- Henry (of Septala), archbishop of Milan 1213-1230: 421
- Henry (of Horburg), bishop of Basel 1181-1191: 92, 93
- Henry, bishop of Prague 1182-1197, duke of Bohemia 1193-1197: 120
- Henry (of Hasenburg), bishop of Strassburg 1181-1190: 90
- Henry, cardinal-bishop of Albano 1179-1188, papal legate to France and Rhinlands, 89, 90, 282 note
- Henry, count of Altenburg (in 1189), 50, 115
- Henry I, count of Bar 1170-1191: 50
- Henry II, son of Theobald I; count of Bar 1214-1239: 466, 467, 469, 471, 475, 476
- Henry I, grandson of Stephen of Chartres and Blois; count of Champagne 1152-1181: 159; wife of, *see* Mary (of France)
- Henry II, son of Henry I; count of Champagne and count-palatine of Troyes 1181-1197: 53-55, 65, 68, 74, 78-81, 85, 759; ruler of kingdom of Jerusalem 1192-1197: 81, 82, 84, 159, 443, 470, 523-530, 602-604, 646, 759; daughter of, 474, 547, 559, 605; wife of, *see* Isabel (of Jerusalem)
- Henry II, count of Cuyk 1166-1204: 92
- Henry VI, count of Grandpré 1231-after 1287: 469
- Henry (Pescatore), count of Malta, imperial admiral, 427, 436, 451, 454
- Henry I, count of Rodez 1214-1227: 393
- Henry, count of (Upper) Salm 1163-1204: 105
- Henry II, count of Sayn 1172-1203: 92
- Henry I, count of Sponheim 1191-1197: 92, 105
- Henry, count of Vöhringen (in 1189), 92, 93
- Henry I, son of Godfrey III of Lower Lorraine; duke of Brabant and count of Louvain 1190-1235: 120, 121, 173 note, 431, 530
- Henry III, duke of Limburg 1167-1221: 93, 431
- Henry IV, son of Walram IV; duke of Limburg 1226-1247: 446, 448, 454, 542
- Henry IV, emperor of Germany 1056 (crowned 1084)-1106: 345
- Henry V, son of Henry IV; emperor of Germany 1106 (crowned 1111)-1125: 132
- Henry VI, son of Frederick I; 55, 94, 96, 103, 104, 109, 147, 148; Hohenstaufen emperor of Germany 1190 (crowned 1191)-1197: 41, 59, 116, 130, 166, 346, 759; king of Sicily 1194-1197: 41, 88, 117, 149, 166, 185, 436; and crown of Cyprus, 82, 118, 119, 149, 528, 604, 610, 647; and crown of Cilicia, 119, 149, 528, 534, 535, 647, 648 note, 649; and crusade of 1197: xvii, 6 note, 42, 117-121, 149, 153, 528-530, 604, 608; wife of, *see* Constance (of Sicily)
- Henry VII, son of Frederick II and Constance; Hohenstaufen duke of Swabia 1216-1235, king of Germany 1220-1232 (d. 1242), 433, 434, 451
- Henry, son of Baldwin V of Hainault: 159, 182, 192-195, 203; Latin emperor of Romania 1205-1216: xviii, 195, 202, 204-212, 214, 215, 224, 232, 239, 240, 760; wives of, *see* Agnes of Montferrat, Maria (of Bulgaria)
- Henry II, Plantagenet king of England 1154-1189: 47-49, 55, 64, 88, 89, 93, 159, 759; legacy to, 40, 41, 59; and heretics, 282, 327 note; wife of, *see* Eleanor of Aquitaine
- Henry III, son of John; Plantagenet king of England 1216-1272: 221, 321, 349, 365, 439, 482, 483, 490, 510, 583; and Lan-

- guedoc, 316, 318 note, 322, 323; and Sicily, 360, 362; letters to, 455, 468; sons of, 360, 582
- Henry XII ("the Lion"), nephew of Welf VI; Welf duke of Saxony 1142-1180, of Bavaria 1156-1180, of Brunswick 1180-1195: 89, 90, 115, 121
- Henry IV, son of Henry "the Lion"; Welf duke of Brunswick and count-palatine of the Rhine 1195-1227: 120, 432, 433
- Henry Dandolo, *see* Enrico Dandolo
- Henry Embriaco, son of Guy I; lord of Jubail 1241-c. 1271: 570
- Henry Filangieri, brother of Richard (d. after 1231), 547, 548
- Henry of Antioch, son of Bohemond IV; bailie of Jerusalem 1263-1264 (d. 1276), 571, 606, 607; wife of, *see* Isabel of Lusignan
- Henry of Dietz, count of Birstein 1189-1234: 91, 92
- Henry of Dreux, son of count Robert II; archbishop of Rheims 1227-1240: 466, 467
- Henry of Kalden, marshal of Frederick I and Henry VI, 94, 102, 120
- Henry I of Lusignan, son of Hugh I; king of Cyprus 1218-1253: 451, 460, 464, 548, 565, 567, 605, 606, 610-615, 618, 619, 626, 652 note, 760, 761; regent of Jerusalem 1246-1253: 559, 560, 580, 606, 613; sisters of, 571; wives of, *see* Alice of Montferrat, Stephanie (of Lampron), Plaisance (of Antioch)
- Henry II "of Lusignan", son of Hugh III; king of Cyprus 1285-1324, of Jerusalem 1286-1291 (titular 1291-1324), 589, 590, 592-597, 607, 617, 623, 656, 762
- Henry of Saarbrücken, uncle of Simon II; count of Zweibrücken 1180-1225: 92
- Henry of Segusio ("Hostiensis"), Italian canonist (d. 1271), 345, 356
- Henry Raspe IV, son of Hermann I; landgrave of Thuringia 1242-1247, king in Germany 1246-1247: 355, 357
- Heraclea (in Thrace), 191; archbishop of, 198
- Heraclea (-Cybistra), 635, 645
- Heraclea, Pontic, 200, 205
- Hérault river, 288
- Hereford, prior of, 79
- Heresy, heretics, 445, 470, *and see* Albigensian (Catharist), Bogomil, Massalian, Neo-Manichean, Paulician, Waldensian
- Hermann (of Katzenellenbogen), bishop of Münster 1174-1203: 92, 93, 95, 96, 104, 109, 120
- Hermann I, brother of Louis III; landgrave of Thuringia 1190-1218: 120
- Hermann IV, margrave of Baden 1160-1190: 92, 93, 115
- Hermann of Salza, master of the Teutonic Knights c. 1210-1239: 542, 551, 650; and fifth crusade, 389, 427; and crusade of Frederick II, 438-440, 442-444, 446, 447, 452, 455-458, 461
- Hers river, 288
- Hervey of Donzi, son-in-law of Peter of Courtenay; count of Nevers 1199-1223: 287, 289, 417
- Heṭoum ("Hayton"), son of Adam of Gaston; Armenian historian (d. after 1307), 630 note
- Heṭoum (Heghi), son of Ōshin II; Heṭoumid lord of Lampron 1168-1218?: 639, 642, 644, 645, 650; wife of, 639, 642
- Heṭoum I, son-in-law of Leon II; king of Cilician Armenia 1226-1269: 550, 567, 634, 651-654, 658, 760; and Mongols, 507, 572, 573, 575, 576, 652-654; wife of, *see* Isabel (Roupenid)
- Heṭoum II, son of Leon III; king of Cilician Armenia 1289-1292, 1294-1296, 1299-1305 (d. 1307), 598 note, 630 note, 655-658
- Heṭoum of Sasoun, Armenian commander (d. 1194), 527; wife of, *see* Alice (Roupenid)
- Heṭoumids, Armenian dynasty in Cilicia 1226-1342: 540, 633-635, 637, 641, 644, 652, 659, 721, *and see* Heṭoum I 1226-1269, Leon III 1269-1289, Heṭoum II 1289-1292, 1294-1296, 1299-1305, Toros III 1292-1294, Sempad 1296-1298, Constantine 1298-1299, Leon IV 1305-1307; *see also* Constantine (3), Euphemia, Heṭoum, Isabel, Maria (2), Nersēs, Ōshin (2), Pagouran, Pazouni, Rita (3), Sempad (3), Shahنشah, Stephanie, Toros, Yaşil
- Hierapolis, 110
- Hildesheim, bishops of, 120, 444, 445, 604, 647
- Hindu Kush range, 668
- Hindus, religious community, 668, 671
- Hişn Kaifā, 684, 693 note, 703, 711; lords of, *see* Artukids, Aiyūbids
- Hodegetria, icon, 232
- Hohenburg, *see* Berthold
- Hohenstaufens, imperial dynasty in Germany and Italy 1138-1268: 59, 88, 117, 166, 170, 220, 431, 445, 508, 513, 517, 531, 547, 584, 759, *and see* Conrad III, Conrad IV, Conradin, Constance (2), Frederick I, Frederick II, Frederick, Manfred, Philip; "crusades" against, 345, 347, 357-367, 370-373
- Holland, counts of, *see* Florent III, William I, William II, John II of Avesnes
- Holstein, count of, 92, 115, 121
- Holy Land, *see* Palestine
- Holy Roman empire, 88, 121, 212, 285, 317 note, 354, 372, 387, 430, 435, 543, 545; emperors of, before 1257: *see* emperors of Germany; after 1257: *see* Richard Plantagenet (of Cornwall) 1257-1272 and Alfonso X of Castile 1257-1273, Rudolph I 1273-1291; vassals of, 159, 164
- Holy Sepulcher, church at Jerusalem, under Latins: 33, 456, 458, 545, 612; under

- Moslems: 47, 99, 178, 326 note, 331, 334, 379, 382, 562; canons of, 525
- Homs, 493, 532, 561, 576, 586, 655, 657, 674, 693, 696, 700, 701, 705, 707, 710, 711, 751, 762; rulers of, *see* Aiyūbids (1174-1263); troops from, 562, 563, 699, 709, 710
- Honorius II (Lambert of Fagnano), pope 1124-1130: 7, 132
- Honorius III (Cencio Savelli), pope 1216-1227: 462, 540, 541, 651 note, 760; and Frederick II, 348, 432-445, 542, 760; and Latin empire, 198, 212-215; and Frankish Greece, 241, 242; and Albigensian crusade, 277 note, 312-316, 318 note, 319; and fifth crusade, 380, 381, 384, 386, 396, 402, 403, 416 note, 420-424, 538, 608, 609; and Cyprus, 623, 625, 626 note
- Honorius IV (Jacob Savelli), pope 1285-1287: 722, 762
- Hospital of St. John, at Jerusalem, knights of, *see* Knights Hospitaller; masters of, *see* Roger of Les Moulins 1177-1187, Geoffrey of Donjon 1193-1202, Garin of Montaigu 1207-1227, Bertrand of Thessy 1228-1230, Peter of Vieille Bride 1239-1242, William of Châteauneuf 1243-1258, Nicholas Lorgne 1277-1284, John of Villiers 1285-1293; other masters were Armengaud of Aspe 1188-1190, Warner of Nablus 1190-1192, Alfonso of Portugal 1203-1206, Geoffrey le Rat 1206-1207, Guerin 1230-1236, Bertrand of Comps 1236-1239, Hugh Revel 1258-1277
- Hoveden, *see* Howden; *see also* Roger Howden, *see* Roger of Howden
- Hromgla, 632, 641, 642, 656, 755
- Hubert, *see* Oberto
- Hubert Walter, nephew of Ranulf de Glanville; bishop of Salisbury 1189-1193, archbishop of Canterbury 1193-1205: 58, 64, 65, 71, 85
- al-Hudhbāni, Ḥusām-ad-Dīn, ibn-abi-'Alī; Kurdish vizir (d. before 1257), 712, 739-742
- Hugh, archdeacon of Lyons, 307
- Hugh (de la Tour), bishop of Clermont (in Auvergne) 1227-1249: 350
- Hugh (Pierrepont), bishop of Liège 1200-1229: 159
- Hugh, bishop of Sées 1229-1240: 467, 468
- Hugh I, count of Champagne 1089-after 1125: 237
- Hugh IV, count of St. Pol 1174-1205, ruler of Demotica 1204-1205: 159, 164, 173 note, 174, 180 note, 182, 192
- Hugh III, duke of Burgundy 1162-1192: 54, 56, 60, 70-72, 74, 75, 78, 79, 81-83, 85, 522
- Hugh IV, son of Odo III; duke of Burgundy 1218-1273, titular king of Thessalonica 1266-1273, and crusade of 1239: 466, 469-471, 475, 476, 481, 484, 552; and crusade of 1249: 244, 499; and Tunisian crusade, 510
- Hugh, stepson of Raymond III of Tripoli; titular lord of Tiberias 1187-1197 (d. 1205), 529, 530, 534; wife of, *see* Margaret of Ibelin
- Hugh de Lacy, English knight, lord of Laurac, 294 note
- Hugh de Puiset, bishop of Durham 1153-1195, justiciar to Richard I, 54
- Hugh III Embriaco, lord of Jubail 1184-1186: 529; wife of, *see* Stephanie of Milly
- Hugh Ferreus (or Ferus), viguier of Mar-seilles, 336-339
- Hugh of Brienne, son of Walter IV; count of Brienne and Lecce 1250-1296, baillie of Athens 1291-1296: 263, 264, 269, 571, 579, 606, 607, 620; wives of, *see* Isabel de la Roche, Helena Angelina Comnena
- Hugh of Champlitte, nephew of William I; baillie of Achaea 1208-1209: 239
- Hugh of Coligny, French knight, 238
- Hugh of Fagiano, Latin archbishop of Nicosia 1251-1267: 627, 628
- Hugh of Gournay, English commander, 69
- Hugh VIII of Lusignan, lord of Lusignan 1152?-1165?: 607
- Hugh X of Lusignan, nephew of Guy and Aimery; count (II) of Marche and (I) of Angoulême 1219-1248: 316, 319
- Hugh XI of Lusignan, son of Hugh X; count (III) of Marche and (II) of Angoulême 1248-1260: 316
- Hugh I of Lusignan, son of Aimery and Eschiva; king of Cyprus 1205-1218: 384, 388, 393, 532, 604 note, 605, 609, 611, 624, 760; half-sister of, 393, 540; wife of, *see* Alice (of Champagne-Jerusalem)
- Hugh II of Lusignan, son of Henry I and Plaisance; king of Cyprus 1253-1267: 567, 570, 571, 579, 580, 584, 606, 607, 761, 762; wife of, *see* Isabel of Ibelin
- Hugh III "of Lusignan", son of Henry of Antioch and Isabel of Lusignan; regent of Cyprus 1261-1267: 571, 606; king 1267-1284: 579, 607, 613, 615-617, 762; regent of Jerusalem 1264-1269: 571, 575, 579, 607, 615; king 1269-1284: 579, 580, 582-586, 588, 589, 596, 597, 613, 616, 762; physician of (d. 1283), 589; wife of, *see* Isabel of Ibelin
- Hugh IV "of Lusignan", son of Guy; king of Cyprus 1324-1359: 607
- Hugh of Noyers, bishop of Auxerre 1183-1206: 212
- Hugh ("le Roux") of Sully, Angevin commander, 260, 593
- Hugh Raymond, bishop of Riez 1202-1223, papal legate in Languedoc, 285, 297
- Hugo Falcandus (possibly admiral Eugenius), Sicilian historian, 3 note, 25, 31 note
- Hugo Lercari, Genoese admiral, 492
- Hulagu (Hülegü), brother of Möngke; Ilkhan of Persia 1258-1265: 568, 571-573,

- 575, 578, 654, 655, 714, 717-721, 726, 744, 751, 761, 762; wife of, *see* Toquz Khātūn
- Hulah, Lake, 391
- Humbert V, lord of Beaujeu 1216-1250: 318, 319, 467, 468, 501
- Humphrey of Montfort, son of Philip; lord of Beirut 1282-1284, of Tyre 1283-1284: 580, 582, 584, 586, 588, 589; wife of, *see* Eschiva of Ibelin
- Humphréal III of Toron, lord of Montréal 1168-1173: 643; wife of, *see* Stephanie of Milly
- Humphrey IV, son of Humphrey III; lord of Toron 1179-1198: 63, 66, 81, 165; wife of, *see* Isabel (of Jerusalem)
- Hundred Years War, 672
- Hungary, 47, 91, 98, 127, 131, 136, 139, 141, 146-149, 167, 168, 212, 213, 219-221, 352, 357, 368, 369, 387, 394, 609, 717, 760; crusaders from, 93, 352, 386, 388, 392, 538, 760; third crusade in, 49, 94, 95, 147; kings of, 648, *and see* Bela II 1131-1141, Stephen III 1162-1173, Bela III 1173-1196, Emeric I 1196-1204, Andrew II 1205-1235, Bela IV 1235-1270; "Master of", 341, 342; princesses of, *see* Margaret, Maria, Piriska
- Huntingdon, earl of, 482
- Hydra, 254
- Hyères, 508
- Ibelin, house of, 443, 460, 477, 489, 544-553, 559, 560, 568, 569, 580, 605, 606, 609-614, 616, 621, *and see* Baldwin (2), Balian (3), Eschiva (2), Guy (3), Helvis, Isabel (2), James, John (4), Margaret, Philip (2)
- Ibn-abī-Dīnār, Arabic historian (d. c. 1700), 26
- Ibn-'Abs, Sicilian emir and pirate (d. 1222), 337-339
- Ibn-al-Athīr, Arabic historian (d. 1234), 25, 390, 421, 428, 662
- Ibn-al-Furāt, Arabic historian (d. 1405), 396
- Ibn-al-Khuwayyī, qadi, 656
- Ibn-as-Sal'ūs, Shams-ad-Dīn, vizir of Mamluks (to 1293), 754
- Ibn-Battūṭah, Arab traveler (d. 1378), 732
- Ibn-Bībī, Persian chronicler (d. after 1282), 732
- Ibn-Ḥassūl, Arabic historian (d. 1058), 736
- Ibn-'Idhārī, Arabic historian (d. c. 1300), 23
- Ibn-Khaldūn, Arabic historian (d. 1406), 30, 757
- Ibn-Maimūn, *see* Muḥammad ibn-Maimūn
- Ibn-Wāṣil, Arabic historian (in 1250), 739, 748 note
- Iconium, 192, 201, 223, 550, 632, 652, 676, 677, 679-681, 687, 688, 690, 692, 728-730; third crusade at, 111-115, 759; sultans at, 91, 132, 140, 141, 147, *and see* Selchūkids of Rūm
- Iesi, 117
- Ifriqiyyah, 17, *and see* Tunisia
- Ignatius, Jacobite patriarch 1222-1252: 566
- Il-Ghāzī, Artukid ruler of Mardin 1107-1122: 663
- Il-khans, Mongol dynasty in Persia 1258-1349: 653, 655, 719, 720, 723-727, 739, 731, 748, 762, *and see* Hulagu 1258-1265, Abagha 1265-1282, Tegüder 1282-1284, Arghun 1284-1291, Gaikhatu 1291-1295, Baidu 1295-1295, Ghazan 1295-1304, Öljaitu 1304-1316, Abū-Sa'īd 1316-1335; *see also* Mengü-Timur
- Ildegiz (Eldigüz), Shams-ad-Dīn, atabeg of Azerbaijan c. 1137-1172: 662
- Île de France, 158, 167, 289, 294
- Ill river, 333
- 'Imad-ad-Dīn Aḥmad, son of al-Mashtūb; emir of Nablus, 408, 699
- 'Imād-ad-Dīn Zengi II, brother of 'Izz-ad-Dīn; Zengid lord of Sinjar c. 1170-1197: 694
- Imām (Arabic, leader), 30
- India, 449, 668, 671, 703
- Indian Ocean, 723
- Indus river, 672, 717
- Innocent II (Gregory Papareschi), pope 1130-1143: 7, 9, 132 note
- Innocent III (Lothair de' Conti de Segni), pope 1198-1216: xviii, 149, 153, 237, 334, 336, 462, 534, 536, 537, 604, 647, 650, 698, 759; and fourth crusade, xv, 154-159, 163-165, 169-176, 180, 185, 531, 608; and Latin empire, 195-198, 200, 201, 203, 204, 206, 211; and Albigensian crusade, 277, 282-287, 289 note, 291, 292, 297-299, 303-309, 344; and Hohenstaufens, 346-349, 430-432, 441; and fifth crusade, 308, 378-387, 391, 395, 538; great-niece of, 565
- Innocent IV (Sinibaldo Fieschi), pope 1243-1254: 352, 373, 488, 560 note, 561, 566, 613, 623, 627, 722, 761; and Latin empire, 224-228; and Frederick II, 224, 225, 354-359, 441, 490, 613; and Sicily, 358-362
- Inquisition, 277 note, 279, 324, 466
- Ioannitsa ("Kaloyan"), brother of Asen and Peter; Vlach tsar of Bulgaria 1197-1204, king 1204-1207: 149, 201-205, 217, 760; wife of, 205
- Ionian Islands, 13, 14 note, 15, 191, 235, 272
- Ionian Sea, 13, 255
- Iqtā' (Arabic, land-grant), 686, 688, 731, 755
- Iran, 662, 663, 667, 668, 670, 672, 676, 680, 686, 687, 691, 719, 720, 723-726, 730, 732; culture of, 665, 685, 689, 690, 724, 725, 729, 731; Mongols in, 717, 719, 720, 731, 761, 762, *and see* Il-khans; religion of, 663; *see also* Persia
- Iraq, 449, 571, 663, 665, 666, 672, 674, 739, 748; Ottomans in, 693 note; *see also* Mesopotamia

- Irbil, lord of, 673, 700
 Ireland, 352; lord of, 48
 Irene Angelina, daughter of Alexius III, 179
 Irene Angelina, daughter of Isaac II; wife of Roger (son of Tancred of Lecce) to 1193, wife of Philip of Swabia 1195-1208: 119, 149, 166, 171
 Irene Angelina Comnena, daughter of Theodore of Epirus; 2nd wife of John Asen of Bulgaria 1240-1241: 222, 226
 Irene Ducaena, wife of Alexius I Comnenus 1077-1118 (d. 1133?), 128
 Irene Lascaris, daughter of Theodore I; 1st wife of John III Vatatzes (d. 1241), 214
 Isaac II Angelus, Byzantine emperor 1185-1195: 37, 38, 46, 62, 88, 118, 119, 146-149, 162, 164, 600, 644, 759; and third crusade, 47, 91, 92, 94-109, 116, 117, 147, 148; and fourth crusade, 166, 169, 170, 173, 174; co-emperor 1203-1204: 150, 151, 179, 181, 182, 760; daughter of, 119, 166; sons of, 166, 168, 190; wife of, *see* Margaret (of Hungary)
 Isaac Comnenus, great-nephew of Manuel I; ruler of Cyprus 1184-1191 (d. 1195), 37, 62-64, 146, 148, 600-602, 621, 643, 759; daughter of, 64; wife of, *see* Anna Angelina
 Isabel, countess of Gloucester, 1st wife of John of England 1189-1199 (d. 1217), 66
 Isabel, daughter of Amalric of Jerusalem and Maria Comnena; wife of Humphrey IV of Toron 1183-1190: 66, 165; 3rd wife of Conrad of Montferrat 1190-1192: 66, 80, 165, 523, 759; wife of Henry II of Champagne 1192-1197: 81, 474, 523, 547, 605, 759; 2nd wife of Aimery of Lusignan 1197-1205: 82, 530, 543, 559, 604, 611, 759; queen of Jerusalem 1190-c. 1206: 529, 532, 579, 580; son of, 532
 Isabel, daughter of Baldwin V of Hainault; 1st wife of Philip II of France 1180-1190: 70
 Isabel, daughter of Humphrey III of Toron; wife of Roupen III of Armenia 1181-1187 (d. after 1198), 643
 Isabel, daughter of James I of Aragon; 1st wife of Philip III of France 1262-1271: 517
 Isabel (Plantagenet), daughter of John of England; 3rd wife of emperor Frederick II 1235-1241: 483
 Isabel (Roupenid), daughter of Leon II of Armenia; wife of Philip of Antioch 1222-1225, wife of Hetoum I 1226-1251: 393, 540, 541, 634, 651, 659, 760
 Isabel (Zabēl; Hetoumid), daughter of Leon III of Armenia; wife of Amalric "of Lusignan" 1295-1310 (d. 1323), 656
 Isabel (de Ray), wife of Othon de la Roche of Athens, 242
 Isabel de la Roche, daughter of Guy I of Athens; wife of Geoffrey of Briel to 1275, 1st wife of Hugh of Brienne 1277-1279: 246, 269, 579
 Isabel (Yolanda) of Brienne, daughter of John and Mary; 2nd wife of emperor Frederick II 1225-1228; princess of Jerusalem 1212-1225: 438, 442, 537, 541; queen 1225-1228: 442, 443, 451, 464, 544, 559, 611, 760
 Isabel of Gibelcar ('Akkār), wife of Renart of Nephin (after 1203), 534
 Isabel of Ibelin, daughter of Guy; wife of Hugh III of Cyprus (d. 1324), 580
 Isabel of Ibelin, daughter of John II; wife of Hugh II of Cyprus 1264?-1267, wife of Hamo the Stranger 1272-1273; lady of Beirut 1264-1282: 580, 584, 586
 Isabel of Lusignan, daughter of Hugh I of Cyprus; wife of Henry of Antioch 1233-1264, regent of Jerusalem 1263-1264: 571, 580, 606, 607
 Isabel of Villehardouin, daughter of William II of Achaëa and Anna; wife of Philip of Anjou 1271-1277, wife of Florent of Hainault 1289-1297, 1st wife of Philip of Savoy 1301-1311; princess of Achaëa 1289-1306: 255, 256, 259, 261-269, 273, 762
 Isabel Pallavicini, daughter of Guy; lady of Bodonitsa c. 1278-c. 1286: 259
 Isauria, 645, 650, 726
 Isenric, abbot of Admont, 92
 Islam; *al-Islām* (Arabic, the submission, to God), xx; religion, 17, 397, 416, 461, 667, 689, 690, 718-720, 758; converts to, 506, 658, 720, 721, 729, 748, 751, 758
 Islam; *dār al-Islām* (Arabic, abode of Islam), community of Moslems, before 1189: 4, 6, 18, 21, 28, 664, 668, 669; after 1189: 301, 506, 568, 666, 672, 721, 732, 747, 749
 Ismā'īlites, Shī'ite Moslem sect, 559, 581, 665, 666, 698; *see also* Assassins
 Istria: coast of, 116, 173; margrave of, 92
 Italy, 58, 61, 64, 89, 160, 164, 167, 168, 170, 175, 195, 206, 214, 271, 272, 279, 334, 335, 347, 349, 373, 375, 570, 608, 610 note, 625, 760; Byzantines and, 5, 9, 25, 29, 125, 132, 136-138, 227; Normans and, 7-12, 21, 104, 125-127; Hohenstaufens and, 12, 59, 88, 90, 117-120, 137, 216, 221, 232, 256, 346-366, 435, 454, 456, 460, 468, 472, 483, 490, 530, 541, 542, 544, 546, 548, 549, 553, 611, 612; Angevins and, 255, 258, 261, 262, 268-270, 366-372, 509, 584, 588; bankers of, 492, 493, 504; crusaders from, 150, 166, 238, 396, 407, 409, 410, 412-415, 420, 421, 427, 594, 617; merchants from, 560, 569, 571, 592, 723, 730; ships from, 52, 53, 67, 109, 161, 434, 517, 592; trade with, 14, 36, 185, 273, 524, 694, 697
 Ithaca, 239
 İvas, Turkoman tribe, 662, 674
 Ivry (-sur-Seine), *see* Galeran

- ‘Izz-ad-Dīn Mas‘ūd, nephew of Nūr-ad-Dīn; Zengid ruler of Mosul 1180-1193: 694
- Jabal Anṣāriyah, *see* Nuṣairī mountains
- Jabal Nūr, 635
- Jabala, 39, 423, 535, 547, 558, 703
- Jacob, bishop of Patti *c.* 1220-1225: 442
- Jacob Barozzi, lord of Thera 1207-after 1244: 238
- Jacob di Levanto, Genoese admiral, 492
- Jacob Tiepolo, Venetian podestà at Constantinople, doge of Venice 1229-1249: 213, 466
- Jacob Viaro, marquis of Cerigotto 1207-1249?: 239
- Jacob's Ford, 391
- Jacobites (or Monophysites), Christian sect, 566, 623, 638, 685; patriarchs of, 529, 578, 648
- Jaffa, 71; under Moslems 1187-1191: 73, 759; under Franks 1191-1197: 75-78, 82-85, 523-525, 529, 623, 695; under Moslems 1197-1204: 529, 530, 532, 697; under Franks 1204-1268: 448, 454, 459, 463, 472, 473, 475, 477, 479, 480, 483, 506-508, 542, 546, 552, 558, 560, 562, 564, 567, 568, 577, 707, 749; counts of, *see* Geoffrey of Lusignan 1191-1193, Aimery of Lusignan 1193-1194, Walter IV of Brienne *c.* 1221-1250, John of Ibelin 1250-1266, Guy of Ibelin 1266-1268; treaty of (1229), 455-457, 544-546, 548, 551, 558, 612, 702
- Jahān-Shāh, Rukn-ad-Dīn, son of Tughrul-Shāh; Selchūkid emir of Erzerum 1225-1230: 673, 683
- Jalāl-ad-Dīn al-Ḥasan, Assassin master in Persia (in 1211), 666
- Jalāl-ad-Dīn Mangubertī (Mengübirdi), son of Muḥammad; Khorezm-Shāh 1220-1231: 449, 561, 672, 673, 683, 701, 703, 704, 717, 761
- Jalāl-ad-Dīn Rūmī, Persian mystic poet (d. *c.* 1230), 689, 732
- James I, son of Peter II; king of Aragon 1213-1276: 290, 303, 304, 312, 318 note, 323, 510, 580, 722; sons of, 580, 581
- James II, son of Peter III; king of Aragon and Sicily 1291-1327: 264, 593
- James de la Roche, son of William of Veligosti; baron of Veligosti 1264?-1302: 259
- James I of Avesnes, commander from Hainault (d. 1191), 50, 51, 65, 75, 115, 160 note
- James II of Avesnes, son of James I; lord of Negroponte 1204-1209: 160, 238, 262
- James of Ibelin, great-grandson of seneschal Baldwin; legal authority, 616, 619
- James of Vitry, crusade preacher, 326, 380, 381; bishop of Acre 1216-1228: 381, 382, 385, 389, 392, 396, 400, 402, 405, 419, 538; cardinal-bishop (of Tusculum) 1228-1240
- James Pantaléon, patriarch of Jerusalem 1255-1261: 569, 570, *and see* Urban IV
- al-Jāmūs, Moslem warrior (d. 1217), 393
- Janina, 263
- al-Jauwād Yūnus, Muzaḥfar-ad-Dīn, grandson of al-‘Adil I Saif-ad-Dīn; Aiyūbid ruler of Damascus 1238-1238 (d. *c.* 1240), 705, 706; wife of, 705
- Jazira, 561, 673, 679, 684, 695, 701-704, 706, 708, 729, 737; rulers of, *see* Aiyūbids (1185-1260)
- Jemri (“poor fellow”; false Siyāwush), Selchūkid pretender 1276-1277: 728
- Jerba, 22
- Jeremiah Ghisi, brother of Andrew; co-lord of Tenos 1207-1251: 238
- Jericho, 421
- Jerusalem, city: under Franks 1099-1187: 37, 38, 325, 394, 578, 619, 634, 640, 643, 759; under Moslems 1187-1229: 70, 73, 75-78, 82, 83, 85, 91, 154, 155, 163, 174, 326, 332, 333, 390, 391, 396, 409, 410, 415, 422, 423, 430, 437, 444, 448, 449, 452-462, 496, 497, 523, 526, 539, 543, 697-699, 701, 705; under Franks 1229-1239: 395, 464, 469, 472, 473, 477, 545, 546, 548, 550, 702, 703, 706, 760; under Moslems 1239-1240: 478-480, 552, 761; under Franks 1240-1244: 481, 489, 558, 561, 614, 674, 709; under Moslems after 1244: 502, 505-507, 562, 564, 568, 710, 713, 743, 761; Greek patriarch of, *see* Dositheus 1669-1707; Latin patriarchs of, *see* Ralph 1191-1194, Aymar “the Monk” 1194-1202, Albert (Avogadro) 1205-1213, Ralph of Mérencourt 1214-1225, Gerald (of Lausanne) 1225-1239, Robert 1240-1254, James Pantaléon (Urban IV) 1255-1261, William 1262-1270, Thomas Agni 1272-1277, Elias (Peleti) 1279-*c.* 1287, Nicholas of Hannapes 1288-1291
- Jerusalem, kingdom, before 1189: 7, 12, 18, 37, 45-47, 88, 126, 133, 344, 640, 759; 1189-1225: 42, 49-52, 63, 65, 66, 70, 71, 76, 79-81, 85, 100, 117, 121, 156, 161, 379, 388, 403, 409, 415, 417, 438, 439, 522-542, 602-605, 608, 621, 624, 625, 697, 759, 760; 1225-1243: 448, 452, 459, 463, 465, 471, 475, 481, 483-485, 542-554, 610-614, 618, 761; 1243-1291: 354, 363, 368, 369, 497, 503-505, 557-598, 614-619, 629, 762; bailies of, *see* John I of Ibelin, Odo of Montbéliard, Thomas of Acerra, Balian Grenier, Warner the German, Richard Filangieri, Ralph of Nesle, Balian of Ibelin (2), John of Ibelin (2), Geoffrey of Sargines, Henry of Antioch, Roger of San Severino, Odo Poilechien, Philip of Ibelin, Amalric of Lusignan; high court of, 195, 532, 543, 544, 546-548, 550, 551, 554, 559, 560, 570, 571, 573, 580, 582-586, 604, 606, 607, 611-613,

- 620; kings of, *see* Baldwin I 1100–1118, Baldwin II 1118–1131, Fulk 1131–1143, Baldwin III 1143–1163, Amalric 1163–1174, Baldwin IV 1174–1185, Baldwin V 1185–1186, Guy of Lusignan 1186–1190, Henry 1192–1197, Aimery of Lusignan 1197–1205, John of Brienne 1210–1212, Frederick (II) 1225–1228, Conrad (IV) 1228–1254, Conradin 1254–1268, Hugh (III) of Lusignan 1269–1284, John 1284–1285, Henry II 1286–1291; pretenders to, *see* Conrad of Montferrat 1190–1192, Charles I of Anjou 1277–1285; queens of, *see* Adelaide, Morfia, Maria Comnena, Sibyl 1186–1190, Isabel 1190–*c.* 1206, Mary (*c.* 1206) 1210–1212, Isabel of Brienne (1212) 1225–1228, Isabel of Ibelin; regents of, *see* John of Brienne 1212–1225, Frederick (II) 1228–1243, Alice 1243–1246, Henry (I) of Lusignan 1246–1253, Plaisance of Antioch 1253–1261, Isabel of Lusignan 1263–1264, Hugh (III) of Lusignan 1264–1269
- Jews, religious community, 14 note, 180, 286, 383, 411, 466, 482, 511, 621 note; individuals, 589, 720, 721
- al-Jibāl, 671, 672, 772
- Jihād* (Arabic, holy war), 667, 678, 679, 754
- Jisr al-Majāmi', 390
- Jizat Dimyāt, 397
- Jizyah* (Arabic, head tax), 26
- Joachim, metropolitan of Tirnovo, Orthodox patriarch of Bulgaria 1235–1237: 219
- Joan (Plantagenet), daughter of Henry II of England and Eleanor; wife of William II of Sicily 1174–1189, 4th wife of Raymond VI of Toulouse 1195–1199: 41, 58, 59, 61–64, 77, 78, 322, 600, 601
- Joan, daughter of Raymond VII of Toulouse; wife of Alphonse of Poitiers 1237–1271, countess of Toulouse 1249–1271: 316, 320
- Joan (of Châtillon), wife of Walter V of Brienne 1306–1311 (*d.* 1354), 272
- John (Bossan), archbishop of Arles 1234–1258: 483
- John (of Meran), archbishop of Gran 1205–1223: 387
- John (Yohannēs), grandson of Ōshin II; Armenian archbishop of Sis (before 1197–1203), catholicus 1203–1206, 1208–1229: 647
- John, bishop of Évreux 1180–1192: 58, 63
- John (of Veirac), bishop of Limoges *c.* 1215–1218: 386
- John, bishop of Lydda (before 1267–after 1271), 580
- John, bishop of Sutri 1179–*c.* 1197: 118
- John I ("the Red"), son of Peter of Dreux and Alice; count of Brittany and earl of Richmond 1237–1286: 470, 510
- John, son of Robert II of Dreux; count of Mâcon 1224–*c.* 1240: 466, 469
- John, son of Louis IX of France; count of Nevers 1265–1270, of Valois 1268–1270: 503, 516
- John I, count of Ponthieu 1147–1191: 53
- John, count of Sées (in 1189), 50
- John ("le Scot"), nephew of Ranulf; earl of Huntingdon 1219–1237, of Chester 1232–1237: 482
- John (of Antioch), son of William; lord of Botron, 570
- John, son of Walter and Margaret; lord of Caesarea 1229–1241: 548, 560
- John, lord of Joinville, biographer (*d.* 1319), 606; and crusade of 1249: 449, 491–494, 497, 498, 500, 502, 504, 505, 615 note; and Tunisian crusade, 509
- John, marshal of the Hospital, 383
- John ("Lackland"), son of Henry II and Eleanor: 48, 49, 53, 54, 66, 79, 82, 523; Plantagenet king of England 1199–1216: 55, 155, 157, 159, 289 note, 346 note, 384, 415, 533; and Albigensian crusade, 284, 285, 294, 297, 303, 306; and fifth crusade, 378, 382; bastard of, 402; wife of, *see* Isabel (of Gloucester)
- John XXI (Peter Juliani), pope 1276–1277: 585, 616, 762
- John XXII (James Duèse), pope 1316–1334: 722
- John Angelus Comnenus, son of Theodore of Epirus; despot of Thessalonica 1236–1244: 222, 223, 225
- John I Angelus Comnenus, illegitimate son of Michael II of Epirus; duke of Neopatras 1271–1295 (*d.* 1296), 247, 257, 259, 261
- John II Angelus Comnenus, grandson of John I; duke of Neopatras 1303–1318: 266, 271
- John Asen, son of Asen; Vlach king of Bulgaria 1218–1241: 205, 209, 210, 213–222, 226, 760, 761; wives of, *see* Maria (of Hungary), Irene Angelina Comnena
- John VI Cantacuzenus, Byzantine emperor 1347–1354 (*d.* 1383), 270
- John Chauderon, nephew of William II of Achaea; constable of Achaea, bailie 1278–1278: 258, 259
- John Colonna, cardinal-priest 1212–1245, papal legate to Constantinople, 198, 213, 214
- John II Comnenus, son of Alexius I: 127; Byzantine emperor 1118–1143: 10, 11, 124, 130–135, 138–141, 146, 162, 637, 677; wife of, *see* Piriska (of Hungary)
- John "Comnenus", son of Alexius Axouch; Byzantine rebel (in 1201), 182 note
- John Contostephanus, Byzantine general, 640
- John de Catavas, Frankish commander, 253
- John de la Roche, son of Guy I; duke of Athens 1263–1280: 257, 259
- John Ducas, Byzantine chancellor, 91, 95, 97–99, 101, 103
- John III Ducas Vatatzes, Byzantine emperor

- at Nicaea 1222-1254: 214, 215, 217-228, 243, 760, 761; wives of, *see* Irene Lascaris, Constance (Hohenstaufen)
- John Embriaco, son of Henry (d. 1282), 587; wife of, 587
- John Ferro, Venetian merchant, 225
- John Italus, Byzantine philosopher (c. 1080), 128
- John l'Aleman, son of Warner the German; lord of Caesarea 1241-1265: 560 note
- John of Alençon, archdeacon of Lisieux, 82
- John of Arcis, French crusader, 415
- John II of Avesnes, great-grandson of Baldwin VI; count of Hainault 1279-1304, of Holland 1299-1304: 262
- John of Béthune, Frankish commander (d. 1238), 221
- John of Botron, brother of William (d. 1244), 563
- John of Brienne, son of Erard II: xviii, 443, 454, 544, 546, 651 note, 761; king of Jerusalem 1210-1212: 532, 536, 537, 605, 760; regent of Jerusalem 1212-1225: 438-440, 442, 537-542, 650; and fifth crusade, xvii, 383, 384, 388, 389, 392, 394, 396-398, 401, 403, 404, 406-409, 414, 415, 417-422, 424-428, 437, 496, 609, 610; Latin co-emperor of Romania 1231-1237: 216-221, 243, 466, 761; daughter of, 464; nephew of, 472; son of, 540, 651 note; wives of, *see* Mary (of Montferrat-Jerusalem), Rita (Roupenid), Berengaria (of Castile)
- John of Grailly, French commander, marshal of the Temple (d. after 1301), 592-594, 596, 597
- John I of Ibelin, son of Balian II and Maria Comnena; constable of Jerusalem 1194-c. 1205, lord of Beirut c. 1198-1236: 460, 464, 543, 546-551, 606, 611-613; bailie of Jerusalem 1205-1210: 532, 534, 536; bailie of Cyprus 1227-1228, 1230-1236: 451, 464, 543, 549, 605, 611-613, 761; mayor of Acre 1232-1236: 464, 549-551, 613, 761; nephews of, 553, 560; sons of, 560
- John of Ibelin, son of John I; lord of Arsuf 1236-1258, bailie of Jerusalem 1247-1248, 1249-1254, 1256-1258, constable 1251-1258: 472, 475, 476, 560, 567, 568, 570, 580, 585
- John of Ibelin, son of Philip: 548, 560; count of Jaffa 1250-1266: 568, 574, 577, 580, 605, 619, 652 note; bailie of Jerusalem 1254-1256: 567, 713; wife of, *see* Maria (Hetoumid)
- John II of Ibelin, son of Balian III; lord of Beirut 1247-1264: 269, 573, 574, 580; wife of, *see* Alice de la Roche
- John of Lügde, deacon at Hameln, 341
- John I "of Lusignan", son of Hugh III; king of Cyprus and Jerusalem 1284-1285: 589, 607, 762
- John I of Montfort, son of Amalric VI; count of Montfort 1241-1248: 493
- John of Montfort, son of Philip; lord of Tyre 1270-1283: 580, 582, 586, 588, 589; wife of, *see* Margaret (of Antioch)
- John II of Nesle, son of Ralph; count of Soissons 1237-1270: 474
- John of Parma, Franciscan minister-general, 226
- John of Pian del Carpine, Franciscan missionary (d. 1252), 722
- John of Procida, Sicilian leader, 260
- John of Ronay, vice-master of the Hospital, 614
- John of Villiers, master of the Hospital 1285-1293: 590, 591, 595, 597
- John V Palaeologus, grandson of Andronicus II; Byzantine emperor 1341-1347, 1354-1376, 1379-1390, 1390-1391: 232
- John VIII Palaeologus, grandson of John V; Byzantine emperor 1425-1448: 233
- John Palaeologus, brother of Michael VIII; ruler of Rhodes 1261-1275: 230, 247, 257
- John Palaeologus, son of Andronicus II (d. 1308), 265
- John Phylax, Greek turncoat, 231
- John I Querini, lord of Astypalaea 1207-1231: 238
- John Turco (of Ancona), Latin archbishop of Nicosia 1288-1295 (d. c. 1298), 596
- Joigny, count of, 469
- Joinville, 772; lord of, *see* John
- Jordan river, 391, 743; crossings of, 390, 391, 393, 539, 698; region east of, *see* Transjordan; region west of, 77, 479, 506, 537, 552, 564
- Joscelin (of Courtenay) I, cousin of Baldwin II of Jerusalem; count of Edessa 1119-1131: 635
- Joscelin (of Courtenay) II, son of Joscelin I and sister of Leon I; count of Edessa 1131-1150 (titular 1150-1159), 637, 638, 641; wife of, *see* Beatrice
- Joscelin (of Courtenay) III, son of Joscelin II; titular count of Edessa 1159-1200: 642
- Joscius, archbishop of Tyre (before 1187-1200), chancellor of Jerusalem, 38, 40, 47, 526
- Joseph de Cancy, treasurer of the Hospital 1248-1271, prior of the English Hospitallers 1273-1280 (d. after 1282), 586 note
- Jubail, 529, 530, 558, 587, 588, 593; lords of, *see* Embriacos
- Julian Grenier, son of Balian I; lord of Sidon 1247-1260 (titular 1260-1275), 560 note, 573, 574, 584, 652 note; wife of, *see* Euphemia (Hetoumid)
- Jumièges, 330
- Jund* (Arabic, salaried warrior class), 17
- Justingen, *see* Anselm
- Juvaini, Shams-ad-Din, vizir of Mongols 1263-1284: 731

- Ka'bah, shrine at Mecca, 749
- Kai-Kā'ūs I, 'Izz-ad-Dīn, son of Kai-Khusrau I; Selchūkid sultan of Rūm 1211-1220: 393, 682, 683, 698, 699
- Kai-Kā'ūs II, 'Izz-ad-Dīn, son of Kai-Khusrau II; Selchūkid sultan of Rūm 1245-1249, co-sultan 1249-1261 (d. c. 1279), 726
- Kai-Khusrau I, Ghiyāth-ad-Dīn, son of Kilij Arslan II; Selchūkid sultan of Rūm 1192-1196, 1204-1211: 202, 649, 681-683, 696; mother of (Greek), 681
- Kai-Khusrau II, Ghiyāth-ad-Dīn, son of Kai-Qobād I and Māh-Perī Khātūn; Selchūkid sultan of Rūm 1237-1245: 223, 652, 673, 684, 690-692, 704, 705, 708, 725; daughter of, 652, 692 note; mother of, 223, 692; sons of, 726; wife of, 652, 692 note
- Kai-Khusrau III, Ghiyāth-ad-Dīn, son of Kilij Arslan IV; Selchūkid sultan of Rūm 1265-1283: 727
- Kai-Qobād I, 'Alā'-ad-Dīn, son of Kai-Khusrau I; Selchūkid sultan of Rūm 1220-1237: 541, 651 note, 652, 673, 682-684, 689, 691, 701, 703, 704; wife of (d. c. 1247), 113 note
- Kairawan, 17, 18, 25, 27 note
- Kakig (son of Kourkēn), Armenian governor of Tarsus, 633
- Kalamata, 240, 244, 249, 258, 264, 265, *and see* Benjamin; barony of, 250
- Kalavun, al-Manṣūr Saif-ad-Dīn, Mamluk sultan of Egypt and Syria 1279-1290: 576, 586, 588-595, 616, 617, 655, 750-756, 762; wife of, *see* Aslun Khātūn
- Kalavryta, 252, 258, 264, 272; baron of, *see* Geoffrey of Tournai; barony of, 250, 258
- Kalden, *see* Henry
- Kalocsa, archbishop of, 387, 389
- al-Kāmil Muḥammad, Nāṣir-ad-Dīn, son of al-Ādil I Saif-ad-Dīn: 695; Aiyūbid governor of Egypt 1202-1218: 398, 539, 696, 698; sultan 1218-1238: 465, 471, 547, 550, 551, 683, 684, 700-707, 737, 761; and fifth crusade, 402, 404, 405, 408-410, 413-418, 422-428, 497, 540, 699, 700, 760; and Frederick II, 448-450, 452-459, 462, 464, 467, 543-545, 612, 614, 701, 702, 709; ruler of Damascus 1237-1238: 704, 705; brother of, 478; grandson of, 712; son of, 742 note
- Kāmilī mamluks, 707, 737
- Kangurlan, 719; *see also* Sultaniyeh
- Kantara, 601, 612; monastery of, 626
- Kara Arslan, Turkish lord of Hışn Kaifā 1144-1167?: 638
- Kara-Khanids, Turkic people, 668, 669, 671
- Kara-Kitai, Mongol people, 668-671, 716, 718, 721; Gur-Khan of, *see* Ye-liu Tashi
- Kara-Tai, vizir of Selchūkids 1249-1256: 725
- Karakorum, 572, 652; 718, 744
- Karaman, Karīm-ad-Dīn, Karamanid chief-tain 1223-1263: 653, 727
- Karamanids, Turkoman dynasty at Laranda 1223-1471: 728, 729, *and see* Karaman 1223-1263
- Karpassia, 625
- Kars, 664; king of, 630
- Karytaina, 272; baron of, 245, 246, 258; barony of, 250, 262
- Kastamonu, 133, 677, 727
- Katzenellenbogen, count of, 238
- Kelibia, 25
- Kerak, 409, 415, 417, 423, 477, 539, 643, 674, 693, 694, 704, 706, 710-712, 714, 745, 747, 750-752; lords of, *see* Aiyūbids (of Transjordan); troops from, 563, 709
- Kerman, 669, 671, 672
- Kesoun, lord of, 632
- Khabur river, 706, 708
- Khachadour, Armenian commander, 632
- Khalij, 637 note
- Khalil, son of aṣ-Ṣāliḥ Aiyūb and Shajar-ad-Durr (d. before 1249), 738, 740
- Khārijites, Moslem sect, 17
- Kharput, 684, 704, 708
- al-Kharrūbah, 52
- al-Khawābī, 698
- al-Khidr, Artukid ruler of Kharput (in 1233), 684
- Khidr, Najm-ad-Dīn, son of Baybars; lord of Kerak 1280-1287: 750-752
- Khoi, 701
- Khorezm, 669, 674; troops from, 489, 561-564, 614, 662, 663, 665, 667, 670-674, 683, 684, 689-691, 701, 703-710, 761
- Khorezm-Shāhs, Turkish dynasty in Persia and Transoxiana 1138-1231: 422, 669-673, 717, *and see* Anushtigin, Tökūsh 1172-1200, Muḥammad 1200-1220, Jalāl-ad-Dīn Manguberti 1220-1231; *see also* Rukn-ad-Dīn Ghūrshānchī
- Khoul Khachig, prince of Törnavan, 633
- Khurasan, 662, 665, 669, 670, 689, 717, 721
- Khuzistan, 662
- Kilij Arslan I, Dā'ūd, son of Sulaimān; Selchūkid sultan of Rūm 1092-1107: 636, 676
- Kilij Arslan II, 'Izz-ad-Dīn, son of Mas'ūd; Selchūkid sultan of Rūm 1155-1192: 140, 141, 144, 639, 640, 643, 645, 677-681, 759; and third crusade, 91, 111-113, 147, 680
- Kilij Arslan IV, Rukn-ad-Dīn, son of Kai-Khusrau II; Selchūkid co-sultan of Rūm 1249-1261, sultan 1261-1265: 653, 726, 727
- Kin (or Chin), Tungus dynasty in China 1122-1234: 717
- Kinānah, Arab tribe, 495
- Kipchaks, Turkic people, 575, 664, 670-672, 748, 755; *see also* Kumans, Golden Horde
- Kirakos, Armenian historian (d. after 1270), 647, 648 note

- Kitbogha, al-ʿĀdil Zain-ad-Dīn, Mamluk sultan of Egypt and Syria 1294–1296: 656
- Kitbogha, Mongol general (d. 1260), 572–574, 653, 714, 718, 745, 761; nephew of, 573
- Kiti, 612
- Klokotnitsa, 761; battle (1230): 217
- Knights Hospitaller, military order, 55, 439; in Syria, 46, 65, 74, 75, 392, 394, 443, 451, 454, 464, 476, 477, 479, 480, 483, 489, 530, 531, 533–536, 538, 540, 541, 544, 547, 548, 550, 552, 553, 560, 562–565, 568–570, 574, 580, 582, 585, 589–592, 594–597, 601, 615, 697, 703, 709; in Egypt, 399, 409, 414, 415, 417, 418, 420, 427, 493, 541; in Cyprus, 624; in Cilicia, 536, 650, 651 note; in Frankish Greece, 237, 251; in Rhodes, 762; fortresses, 456, 545, 576, 581, 752; houses, 458, 569, 587; individual knights, 296, 383, 387, 593, 614; masters, *see under* Hospital
- Knights Templar, military order, 55, 378 note, 388, 439, 504, 762; in Syria, 46, 65, 74, 75, 392, 394, 395, 443, 444, 451, 452, 454, 457–460, 464, 476, 477, 479–481, 483–485, 489, 506, 530, 531, 533–539, 544–548, 550, 552, 553, 560, 561, 568–570, 574, 580, 582, 585, 587, 588, 590–598, 615, 649, 698, 703, 707, 708 note, 709; in Egypt, 405, 408, 409, 413–415, 417, 420, 422, 427, 493, 499; in Cyprus, 81, 148, 602, 603, 624, 759; in Cilicia, 526–528, 536, 537, 550, 639, 640, 642, 646, 654; in Frankish Greece, 237, 251, 252; fortresses, 456, 479, 545, 574–578, 581, 598; houses, 69, 459, 545, 546, 587; individual knights, 296, 383, 387, 458, 479, 563, 570, 573, 593, 597; masters, *see under* Temple; “of Islam”, 739
- Kogh Vasil (Basil “the Robber”), Armenian lord of Kesoun (d. 1112), 632, 638, 653
- Korea, 715, 717
- Köse Dagħ, battle (1243): 223, 691, 708 note, 717, 725, 761
- Krak de Montréal, 409, 415, 417, 423, 701, 750
- Krak des Chevaliers: under Franks to 1271: 393, 456, 558, 576, 697, 698; Hospitallers of, 532, 534, 547, 550, 697; capture (1271): 581, 582, 749, 762; under Moslems after 1271: 595
- Krum, Bulgarian chieftain 808–814: 204
- Kubilai, brother of Möngke; Great Khan of the Mongols 1260–1294: 717
- Kulin, ban of Bosnia 1180–1204: 149
- Kumans (or Polovtsy), Turkic people, 125, 147, 200, 203, 220, 222, 247; mercenaries, 102, 105, 107; individuals, 205; *see also* Kipchaks
- Kuno, count of Falkenstein (and Neuburg am Inn, in 1189), 92, 93
- al-Kūrānī, Shīʿite rebel (d. 1261), 746
- Kurds, mountain tribes of Kurdistan, 663, 664, 668, 671, 726; troops, 84, 408, 655, 706, 707, 712, 714, 737, 740, 741, 756; individuals, 37, 408, 529, 673, 699, 739
- Kutuz, al-Muzaffar Saif-ad-Dīn, Mamluk deputy-sultan of Egypt 1252–1259, sultan 1259–1260: 573, 574, 714, 743–745, 761
- Kyburg, count of, *see* Ulrich
- Kyrenia, 601, 612, 613, 761
- L’Erminet, 773; lord of, 527
- La Clisura, 257
- La Cuppa, 257
- La Fauconnerie, farm, 585
- La Ferté-Alais, lord of, 469, 472
- La Garnache, lord of, 469
- La Roche (sur Ognon), *see* De la Roches
- La Roche de Russole, 578
- Lacedaemon, 244, 253; bishopric of, 252; *see also* Sparta
- Laconia, 237, 240, 253, 258, 264, 272
- Laconia, Gulf of, 13
- Ladder of Tyre, 588
- Lagonesse, *see* Gonesse; *see also* Philip
- Lairon, *see* Aymar
- al-Lajjūn, 575
- Lambert of Thury, lord of Limoux, 294 note, 309
- Lampron, 633, 634, 642, 644, 650; bishops of, 645, 648 note, 649; lords of, *see* Heṭoumids
- Lampsacus, 217, 219
- Lancaster, count of, 360, 582; honor of, 54
- Lando, archbishop of Reggio di Calabria 1217–1234, of Messina 1234–c. 1255: 446
- Landsberg, margrave of, *see* Conrad
- Langres, bishop of, 12
- Languedoc, 277–324, 330, 491, 514, 760; map of, 276
- Laodicea (ad Lycum), 681
- Laon, 16; bishop of, *see* Anselm; district of, 238
- Lapithos, lady of, 269
- Laranda, 113
- Larissa, 207, 238
- Larmena, 257, 272
- Las Navas de Tolosa, battle (1212), 297, 301, 302, 327, 760
- Lascaris (Lascarids), Byzantine imperial dynasty at Nicaea 1208–1261: 688, *and see* Theodore I 1208–1222, John III (Ducas Vatatzes) 1222–1254, Theodore II 1254–1258; *see also* Constantine, Eudocia, Irene, Maria (2)
- Latakia: under Moslems 1188–1260: 423, 526, 531, 535, 550, 558, 698; under Franks 1260–1287: 572, 578, 585, 590, 617; archdeacon of, 624
- Lateran councils, third (1179), 282, 327 note; fourth (1215), 196, 287, 306–308, 311, 380, 382, 385, 431, 538, 760
- Latin church, 87–89, 344–364, 368–375, 378, 379, 443, 457, 461, 462, 470, 656 note; and Albigensians, 281, 282, 291, 308, 317, 319, 322, 344–347; in North Africa, 27, 28; in Latin empire, 195–197; in Frankish

- Greece, 241, 242 note, 251; in Cyprus, 618, 623-629; in Egypt, 403, 420, 435; in Syria, 535, 572; in Persia, 722; in China, 723; union with Armenian church, 529, 647; union with Greek church, *see under* Greek church; *see also* Papacy
- Latin empire of Constantinople, 169, 187-233, 240, 242-244, 367, 377, 466, 509, 531, 532, 570, 603, 625, 628, 682, 761, *and see* Romania, Frankish; emperors of, *see* Baldwin I 1204-1205, Henry 1206-1216, Peter of Courtenay 1217-1218, Robert of Courtenay 1221-1228, Baldwin II 1228-1231, 1237-1261, John of Brienne 1231-1237; empresses of, *see* Agnes of Montferrat, Maria, Yolanda, Mary of Brienne; regents of, *see* (emperor) Henry 1205-1206, Conon of Béthune 1216-1217, 1219-1221, Yolanda 1217-1219, Mary of Courtenay 1228-1228, Narjot I of Toucy 1228-1231, 1238-1241, Philip of Toucy 1241-1251; titular emperors of, *see* Baldwin II 1261-1273, Philip of Courtenay 1273-1285; titular empress of, *see* Catherine of Courtenay 1273-1308
- Latin states (in Syria), maps of, 86, 556
- Latins, xv, xvii, 16, 110, 124-126, 130, 133, 140, 146-151, 176, 179-185, 189, 192-205, 208-233, 608, 635, 640, 642, 651; under Greek rule, 108, 109, 135, 143-145, 162, 165, 181, 209, 622; in Moslem service, 209, 223, 683, 691; *see also* Franks
- Latrun, 77
- Laurac, 294 note
- Lavaur, 288, 290, 292, 293; council of (1213), 296, 298, 299, 307
- Lawrence, Franciscan legate, 627
- Le Bourg, *see* Baldwin (II, of Jerusalem)
- Le Mans, 47, 63
- Le Puiset, *see* Hugh de Puiset
- Le Puy, 304, *and see* Durand
- Lebadea, 241; lord of, *see* William de la Roche
- Lebanon, Mount, 600
- Lecce, 346; counts of, *see* Tancred, Walter of Brienne
- Lefkara, 625
- Leicester, earls of, 289, 482, 552; wood of, 483
- Lemnos, 191, 229
- Lentiana, 209
- Lentini, *see* Thomas Agni
- Leo (Brancaleone), cardinal-deacon 1200-1202, cardinal-priest 1202-c. 1230, papal legate to Bulgaria, 149, 201
- Leo IX (Bruno of Egisheim), pope 1049-1054: 345
- Leo, Syrian renegade, 576
- Leo Gabalas, ruler of Rhodes (after 1233), 217
- Leo Sgourus, lord of Corinth (d. c. 1208), 182 note, 202, 237, 240; wife of, *see* Eudocia Angelina
- Leon (Levon) I, son of Constantine; Roupenid prince of Cilician Armenia 1129-1137 (d. 1139), 133, 636-638, 640; wife of (sister of Baldwin II), 637
- Leon II, son of Stephen; Roupenid prince of Cilician Armenia 1187-1198: 42, 114, 119, 121, 149, 527, 529, 644, 647-649; king 1198-1219: 384, 528, 531-540, 649-651, 653, 658, 683, 697, 698, 759; daughter of, 393, 541, 634, 651; wife of, *see* Sibyl of Lusignan
- Leon III, son of Hetoum I; Hetoumid king of Cilician Armenia 1269-1289: 576, 584, 654, 752
- Leon IV, son of Toros III; Hetoumid king of Cilician Armenia 1305-1307: 658
- Leonard Foscolo, lord of Anaphe 1207-1228: 239
- Leopold V of Babenberg, duke of Austria 1177-1194: 91, 116
- Leopold VI of Babenberg, son of Leopold V; duke of Styria 1194-1230, of Austria 1198-1230: 327 note; and third crusade, 386-389, 394, 397, 399-401, 407, 411, 539, 609
- Les Barres, *see* William
- Les Vaux-de-Cernay, abbot of, 174, 277 note; *and see* Peter
- Lesbos, 191
- Letts, Baltic people, 122
- Lévis (-Saint Nom), *see* Guy
- Licario, knight from Vicenza, 256, 257, 259, 272; wife of, *see* Felicia (dalle Carceri)
- Liebenau, count of, *see* Siegfried
- Liedekerke, *see* Walter
- Liège, 331, 333 note, 401; archdeacon of, 583; bishops of, *see* Rudolph, Hugh; diocese of, 510
- Liegnitz, battle (1241), 717
- Lille, *see* Guy de Charpigny
- Limassol, 62-64, 447, 451, 582, 599-601, 610, 612, 614, 615 note, 622-625
- Limburg, dukes of, *see* Henry III, Walram IV, Henry IV
- Limoges, *see* Aimery; bishop of, 386
- Limoux, 294 note, 319
- Lisbon, 56, 395, 396; bishop of, 395
- Lisieux, archdeacon of, 82
- Lithuanians, Baltic people, 121
- Little Prespa Lake, 192
- Livs, Baltic people, 121
- Lluria, *see* Loria; *see also* Roger de
- Locedio, abbot of, 173, 536
- Loches, lord of, 469
- Loire river, 56, 337, 341
- Lombard League, 137, 348, 355, 445
- Lombardy, 350-352, 354-356, 358, 362-364, 366, 469; children's crusade in, 333, 334; communes of, 166, 359, 435, 445, 549; crusaders from, 167, 232, 257, 349, 350, 412, 594; rebel barons from, 206-208, 210, 212, 239
- Lombers, 294 note
- London, 49, 221; Tower of, 55
- Lopadium, 192

- Loria, *see* Roger de Lluria
- Lorraine, 331; crusaders from, 490; duke of, 385, 431
- Lot river, 287 note, 295, 303
- Lothair II, emperor of Germany 1125 (crowned 1133)—1137: 9, 132
- Lothair Filangieri, brother of Richard (d. after 1243), 547, 548, 550, 553, 554, 557, 565
- Louge river, 300
- Louis VI, Capetian king of France 1108—1137: 212
- Louis VII, son of Louis VI; Capetian king of France 1137—1180: 48, 137, 141; and second crusade, 8 note, 12, 15, 16, 40, 135, 185, 282; daughter of, 134; wives of, *see* Eleanor of Aquitaine, Adela (of Champagne)
- Louis VIII, son of Philip II and Isabel, 54, 70; Capetian king of France 1223—1226: 287, 300, 305, 306, 314—319, 321, 440, 760; wife of, *see* Blanche of Castile
- Louis IX, son of Louis VIII; Capetian king of France 1226—1270: xviii, 354, 470, 483, 760; and Languedoc, 319—322; and Latin empire, 220—222, 224—226, 246, 466—468; and crusade of 1249: 244, 245, 341, 356, 357, 426, 487—508, 566, 567, 614, 615, 627, 674, 712, 713, 735, 739—742, 761; and Tunisian crusade, 368, 508—518, 579—582, 749, 762; wife of, *see* Margaret of Provence
- Louis I, son of Theobald V; count of Blois 1191—1205, "duke of Nicaea" 1204—1205: 155, 158—160, 164, 174, 182, 192, 203
- Louis I, grandson of Stephen I; count of Sancerre 1218—1268: 469
- Louis I (of Kelheim), nephew of Conrad of Wittelsbach; duke of Bavaria 1183—1231: 423, 435
- Louis III, landgrave of Thuringia 1172—1190: 50, 65, 115
- Louis IV, son of Hermann I; landgrave of Thuringia 1218—1227: 444, 446
- Louis of Burgundy, grandson of duke Hugh IV; prince of Achaea (and titular king of Thessalonica) 1313—1316: 270 note; wife of, *see* Mahaut of Hainault
- Loulon, 645
- Louvain, count of, 173 note
- Low Countries, Lowlands, 327, 330, 332; crusaders from, 326, 337, 356, 510; *see also* Netherlands, Flanders, Frisia
- Lower Lorraine, duke of, 93
- Lubban, 390
- Lübeck, 444, *and see* Arnold; burghers from, 115, 120
- Lucca, *see* Ptolemy
- Lucienne of Segni, great-niece of Innocent III; 2nd wife of Bohemond V of Antioch 1235—1252, regent of Antioch and Tripoli 1252—1252: 507, 565—567, 570, 585
- Lucius III (Ubaldo Allucingoli), pope 1181—1185: 282, 646 note
- Lucy (-le-Bocage), *see* Guy
- Lucy, daughter of Bohemond VI of Antioch; wife of Narjot of Toucy, countess of Tripoli 1288—1289: 584, 591, 592
- Ludolph (of Kroppenstedt), archbishop of Magdeburg 1192—1205: 156 note, *and see* 172 note
- Lügde, *see* John
- Lu'lu', Badr-ad-Din, regent of Mosul c. 1210—1234, ruler 1234—1259: 662, 673, 706, 708, 711, 744; daughter of, 744
- Lurs, Iranic people, 663
- Lusignan, family, 63, 524, 525, 602, 614, 622—624, 759, *and see* Aimery, Amalric, Bohemond, Burgundia, Geoffrey, Guy (2), Henry I, Henry II, Hugh VIII, Hugh X, Hugh XI, Hugh I, Hugh II, Hugh III, Hugh IV, Isabel, John, Mary, Melisend, Sibyl
- Lycaonia, 113
- Lydda, 523, 532; archdeacon of, 624; bishops of, 563, 580
- Lydia, 192
- Lyons, 57, 224, 316, 317, 354, 364, 466, 468, 469; archbishop of, 348; archdeacon of, 307; councils of, (1245): 224, 357, 490, 566, 761; (1274): 583, 584, 587, 722, 762
- Ma'arrat-an-Nu'mān, 700, 705
- Macedonia, 191, 192, 212, 225, 228, 236, 238, 242, 246, 247, 270, 275; heresy in, 144; imperial dynasty from, 124; third crusade in, 102, 105, 108
- Mâcon, bishop of, 467; count of, 466, 469
- Madrasah (Arabic, school or college), 689, 738, 747, 757
- Maecander river, 726; valley of, 140, 201, 681
- Magdeburg, 433; archbishop of, 156 note, 172 note; burggrave of, 93, 115
- Maguelonne, archdeacon of, 283
- Magyars, Ugric people, 131
- Māh-Peri Khātūn, concubine of Kai-Qobād I, 692 note
- al-Maḥallah, 425, 426
- Mahaut of Hainault, daughter of Florent of Achaea and Isabel; wife of Guy II of Athens 1305—1308, wife of Louis of Burgundy 1313—1316; princess of Achaea 1313—1318 (d. 1331), 265, 268—270
- Mahdia, 18—27, 30—32, *and see* Philip; bishops of, 27, 31 note
- Mahmūd Khan, nephew of Sanjar; Kara-Khanid ruler of Khurasan 1156—1162: 669
- Maina, 244, 248, 253
- Maine, lord of, 48
- Mainz, 89, 333, 430, 759; archbishops of, *see* Conrad of Wittelsbach, Siegfried; scholasticus of, 434
- Maio of Bari, Sicilian official (d. 1160), 29—32
- Maio Orsini, grandson of Margarit of

- Brindisi; count of Cephalonia 1194-1238: 239, 243, 265
- Maiyafariqin, 684, 693; lords of, *see* Aiyūbids (of the Jazira)
- al-Majdal, 708
- Majorca, 36, 270
- Makhairas, Leontios, Greek chronicler, 618
- Makryplagi, pass, 254, 270
- Malea, Cape, 13
- Malik-Ghāzi, Dānishmendid ruler 1097-1105?; 677 note
- Malik-Shāh (II), Quṭb-ad-Dīn, son of Kīlij Arslan II; Selchūkid prince at Iconium 1188-1192: 111, 113, 680, 681
- Malik-Shāh, Selchūkid sultan 1072-1092: 663, 669
- Malta, 17, 21; counts of, 37, 427, 436, 451, 454
- Mamistra, 134, 632, 635-644, 654, 657, 762
- Mamlūk* (Arabic, slave; fem. *mamlūkah*), 83, 668, 735, 736, 738, 743
- Mamluks, slave soldiers, of 'Abbāsids and Selchūkids, 736; of Aiyūbids, 83, 84, 489, 503, 563, 705-708, 709 note, 711, 712, 736-740; of Mamluk sultans, 584, 615, 713, 714, 741, 745, 750, 755-757, 761
- Mamluks, "Baḥrī", slave dynasty in Egypt and Syria 1250-1390: xviii, 363, 368, 505, 567, 573, 582, 586, 668, 694, 712, 719-722, 735, 740, 743-758, 762, *and see* Aybeg (1250) 1252-1257, 'Alī 1257-1259, Kutuz 1259-1260, Baybars 1260-1277, Berke Khan 1277-1279, Salamīsh 1279-1279, Kalavun 1279-1290, al-Ashraf Khalīl 1290-1293, Muḥammad 1293-1294, 1299-1309, 1310-1341, Kitbogha 1294-1296; *see also* Khidr, Shajar-ad-Durr; army of, 514, 573, 574, 576, 577, 581, 585, 589, 592, 593, 597, 598, 653, 657, 718, 745, 747-750, 753, 756, 761, 762, *and see* Egypt, troops from; fleet of, 723; map, 734
- Manbij, 696, 708
- Mandālē, sons of (at Kybistra), 635
- Manfred, illegitimate son of emperor Frederick II; Hohenstaufen governor of Sicily 1250-1258: 227, 228, 359, 361, 362; king 1258-1266: 42, 232, 246, 247, 255, 257, 343, 362-367, 370, 373, 508, 579, 748, 762; wife of, *see* Helena Angelina Comnena
- al-Manṣūr Ibrāhīm, Nāṣir-ad-Dīn, son of al-Mujāhid Shīrkūh; Aiyūbid ruler of Homs 1240-1246: 561-564, 708-710
- al-Manṣūr Muḥammad, Nāṣir-ad-Dīn, son of al-'Azīz 'Uthmān; Aiyūbid sultan of Egypt 1198-1200: 695, 696
- al-Manṣūr Muḥammad II, Nāṣir-ad-Dīn, son of al-Muzaffar 'Uthmān; Aiyūbid governor of Hamah 1191-1193, ruler 1193-1221: 411, 534, 535, 693, 696, 697
- al-Manṣūr Muḥammad II, Saif-ad-Dīn, son of al-Muzaffar Maḥmūd; Aiyūbid ruler of Hamah 1243-1284: 576, 581, 654, 711, 714; wife of, *see* 'Ā'ishah Khātūn
- Mansurah, 418, 422, 424, 425, 448, 496-502, 516, 615, 700, 711, 738, 739
- Mantua, 363; "bard of", 114
- Manuel Angelus Comnenus, brother of Michael I of Epirus; despot of Thessalonica 1230-1236 (d. 1241), 215, 217-219, 222; wife of, *see* Maria (of Bulgaria)
- Manuel Camytzes, Byzantine official, rebel (in 1201), 171
- Manuel I Comnenus, son of John II and Piriska: 10; Byzantine emperor 1143-1180: 11-15, 16 note, 25, 29, 36, 90, 124, 130, 133-146, 148, 162, 165, 185, 622, 637, 639-641, 677-679; daughter of, 164; great-nephew of, 600; wives of, *see* Bertha of Sulzbach, Maria of Antioch
- Manuel I Sarantenus, Orthodox patriarch at Nicaea 1217-1222: 214
- Manzalah, Lake, 414, 419
- Manzikert, battle (1071), 631, 679
- al-Maqrīzī, Arabic historian (d. 1442), 410, 426, 453, 455, 515
- Mar Athanasius, Jacobite priest, 638
- Mar Yabhalāhā III, Nestorian patriarch (in 1294), 656, 722
- Maraclea, 39, 581, 752; lord of, *see* Bartholomew
- Maragha, 656, 721
- Marash, 632, 635, 641, 656, 657, 687, 755; governor of, 632; lord of, 636
- Marbach, monastery, 332, 333
- Marche, counts of La, 316, 319, 607
- Marco Giustiniani, Venetian consul at Acre, 568
- Marco Gradenigo, Venetian podestà at Constantinople (in 1261), 231
- Marco Polo, Italian traveler (d. 1324), 655, 669, 723
- Marco I Sanudo, nephew of Enrico Dandolo; duke of the Archipelago 1207-c. 1227: 202, 238, 239, 242, 272
- Marco II Sanudo, son of Angelo; duke of the Archipelago 1262-1303: 272
- Marco Venier, marquis of Cerigo 1207-1238: 239
- Mardin, 704; lords of, *see* Artukids
- Margaret ("Maria"), daughter of Bela III of Hungary and Agnes; 2nd wife of Isaac II Angelus 1185-1204, 2nd wife of Boniface of Thessalonica 1204-1207: 147, 189, 190, 206, 207, 212
- Margaret, daughter of Henry of Antioch; wife of John of Montfort 1269-1283, lady of Tyre 1284-1291 (d. 1308), 580, 593, 752
- Margaret II, daughter of Latin emperor Baldwin I; countess of Flanders and Hainault 1244-1279: 360
- Margaret, daughter of Louis VII of France; 2nd wife of Bela III of Hungary 1185-1196: 94
- Margaret of Alsace, sister of Philip I; wife

- of Baldwin V of Hainault 1169-1194; countess of Flanders 1191-1194: 70
- Margaret of Ibelin, daughter of Balian II; wife of Hugh of Tiberias (to 1205), wife of Walter of Caesarea, 560
- Margaret of Montaigu, 2nd wife of Peter of Dreux 1235-1241: 470
- Margaret of Provence, wife of Louis IX of France 1234-1270 (d. 1296), 503, 741
- Margarit of Brindisi, Sicilian admiral, count of Malta (d. 1195), 37-40, 47, 62
- Maria, daughter of Andrew II of Hungary and Gertrude; 1st wife of John Asen of Bulgaria 1220-1237: 213, 220
- Maria, daughter of Boril of Bulgaria; 2nd wife of Latin emperor Henry 1211-1216: 210
- Maria (Heṭoumid), daughter of Constantine of Lampron; wife of John of Ibelin, of Jaffa, 652 note
- Maria, daughter of Heṭoum I; wife of Guy of Ibelin, 652 note
- Maria, illegitimate daughter of John Asen of Bulgaria; wife of Manuel of Thessalonica (after 1230), 215
- Maria Comnena, daughter of Manuel I and Bertha; wife of Renier of Montferrat 1180-1182: 137-139, 164
- Maria Comnena, great-granddaughter of John II; 2nd wife of Amalric of Jerusalem 1167-1174, wife of Balian II of Ibelin c. 1176-1193 (d. 1217), 66
- Maria Lascaris, daughter of Theodore I; wife of Bela IV of Hungary (after 1224), 226, 393
- Maria Lascaris, daughter of Theodore II; 1st wife of Nicephorus of Epirus (after 1257), 227
- Maria of Antioch, daughter of Raymond of Poitiers and Constance; 2nd wife of Manuel I Comnenus 1161-1180 (d. 1182), 134, 144, 145
- Marino Dandolo, lord of Andros 1207-1233: 238
- Marino Filangieri, brother of Richard; archbishop of Bari 1226-1251: 359, 446, 451
- Marino Sanudo, Venetian historian (d. 1533), 162, 657
- Marino Zeno, Venetian podestà at Constantinople 1205-1207: 193-195
- Maritsa river, 107, 191, 192, 205, 217; valley of, 101
- Marj aṣ-Ṣuffar, 390, 398
- Markward of Anweiler, imperial steward (d. 1202), 108, 346, 347, 349, 759
- Markward of Neuenburg, chamberlain to Frederick I, 92, 95, 108
- Marly (-le-Roi), lord of, 468
- Marmande, 303, 315
- Marmara, Sea of, 146, 171, 177, 230, 231; coast of, 191, 209, 217
- Maronites, Christian sect, 621 note
- al-Marqab, 393, 456, 535, 547, 553, 601, 703; Hospitallers of, 534, 586; fall of (1285), 589, 752
- Marseilles, 57, 58, 64, 167, 175, 309, 335-339, 471, 472, 483, 511, 515; merchants from, 623; ships from, 57, 492; viscount of, *see* Roncelin
- Marsiglio Giorgio, Venetian bailie at Tyre 1240-1244: 553, 559 note
- Martin, abbot of Pairis, 164
- Martin, bishop of Meissen 1170-1190: 92, 93, 115
- Martin, chamberlain of the Temple, 383
- Martin IV (Simon of Brie), pope 1281-1285: 369-371
- Martoni (Nicholas of), Italian traveler (in 1394), 618
- Mary, daughter of Conrad of Montferrat and Isabel of Jerusalem; 1st wife of John of Brienne 1210-1212; princess of Jerusalem c. 1206-1210, queen 1210-1212: 81 note, 442, 464, 532, 536, 537
- Mary, daughter of Henry I of Champagne; wife of Latin emperor Baldwin I 1185-1204: 159, 535
- Mary, daughter of Louis VII of France and Eleanor; wife of Henry I of Champagne c. 1149-1181 (d. 1198), 53, 159
- Mary, daughter of Raymond Ruppen of Antioch; wife of Philip of Montfort 1240-1268: 553, 554, 559
- Mary of Antioch, daughter of Bohemond IV and Melisend; claimant to throne of Jerusalem 1269-1277 (d. after 1307), 579, 580, 583-585, 617
- Mary of Antioch, daughter of Bohemond VI; 1st wife of Nicholas II of St. Omer, 261
- Mary of Brienne, daughter of Latin emperor John and Rita; wife of Latin emperor Baldwin II 1231-1273 (d. c. 1275), 216, 217, 221, 223, 225, 229, 232, 615, 761
- Mary of Courtenay, daughter of Latin emperor Peter and Yolanda; 3rd wife of Theodore I Lascaris 1218-1228, regent of Romania (in 1228), 213, 214, 216
- Mary of Lusignan, daughter of Hugh I of Cyprus; wife of Walter IV of Brienne 1233-1250 (d. before 1261), 571, 606
- Mary of Oignies, mystic from Brabant (d. 1213), 381
- Marzano (di Nola), *see* Thomas
- "Mascemuch" (?), unidentified emir at Alexandria, 337
- Mashgharah, 393
- al-Maṣṣṭūb, Kurdish emir, 699; son of, *see* 'Imād-ad-Dīn Aḥmad
- Massalian heresy, heretics, 144
- Mas'ūd I, Rukn-ad-Dīn, son of Kilij Arslan I; Selchūkid sultan of Rūm 1116-1155: 136, 636-639, 641, 676-678
- Mas'ūd III, Ghiyāth-ad-Dīn, great-grandson of Kai-Kā'ūs II; last Selchūkid of Rūm (after 1307), 728
- al-Mas'ūd Yūsuf, Ṣalāḥ-ad-Dīn, son of

- al-Kāmil; Aiyūbid ruler of Yemen 1215–1229: 408, 742 note
- Mas'ūd-Beg, vizir of Chaghatai Mongols, 723
- Matagrifon: baron of, 258; barony of, 250
- Matapan, Cape, 244
- Mathesep* (from Arabic *muhtasib*, inspector of weights and measures), 620
- Matthew, abbot of St. Denis, 375
- Matthew II, baron of Montmorency 1189–1230: 159
- Matthew, Latin patriarch of Constantinople 1221–1226: 198, 214
- Matthew (Madṭēos) of Edessa, Armenian historian (d. c. 1136), 633
- Matthew of Salerno, Sicilian official (d. 1153), 41
- Matthew Paris, English chronicler (d. 1259), 157, 341, 342, 373, 468, 481–484, *and see* plates 2A, 2B
- Maudūd, Rukn-ad-Dīn al-Mas'ūd, Artukid ruler of Ḥiṣn Kaifā 1219–1232: 683, 684
- Maugastel, *see* Philip; *see also* Simon (archbishop of Tyre)
- Mauléon, *see* Savary
- Mauthausen, 93
- Mazyadids, Arab dynasty at Hilla 1012–1150: 663, *and see* Dubais 1107–1134
- Mecca, 23, 524, 708, 749
- Mediterranean Sea, 8, 9, 17, 25, 29, 42, 135, 161, 327, 331, 370, 375, 382, 396, 397, 405, 472, 482, 508, 511, 655, 668, 715, 723, 726, 730; islands in, 21; region of eastern, 5, 26, 33, 118, 122, 126, 134, 148, 161, 264, 273, 279, 508, 661, 662, 674; region of southern, 26; region of western, 372, 512; map of central, 2; map of western, 44
- Megara, 236
- Meillor III of Ravendel (Ravendan), 752 note
- Meissen: bishop of, 92, 93, 115; margrave of, *see* Dietrich
- Melfi, bishop of, 542, 612
- Melgueil, 284, 286
- Melisend of Lusignan, daughter of Aimery and Isabel of Jerusalem; 2nd wife of Bohemond IV 1218–1233: 393, 540, 559, 560 note, 579, 580, 609
- Melissena, —, daughter of governor of Arta; wife of Michael I of Epirus (after 1204), 201
- Melitene, 132, 632, 637, 677–679; governor of, 632
- Melk, advocate of, 93
- Melkites, Christian Arabs, 411
- Mello, *see* Dreux (2)
- Melnik, 205
- Melos, 239
- Melun, council of (1216), 381
- Menas, 105, *and see* Enos
- Mengü-Timur, son of Hulagu (d. after 1281), 751
- Mengüchekids (or Mengüjükids), Turkish dynasty at Erzincan 1072–1228: 682, *and see* Bahrām-Shāh
- Meran, *see* Croatia; dukes of, 92, 387, 431; *see also* Agnes, Gertrude
- Mérencourt, *see* Ralph
- Merseburg, 9, 22
- Mesopotamia, 693–696, 699–701, 703, 705–708, 723, 730; as seat of caliphate, 662, 665, 667; Mongols in, 714, 717–719, 726; Nestorians in, 668; officials from, 712; princes of, 673; Turkomans in, 680, 684; *see also* Iraq, Jazira
- Messenia, 237, 240, 246, 248, 252, 254, 258, 261, 265, 272
- Messina, 40 note, 41, 58–61, 120, 382, 600, 759; treaty of (1190), 79
- Messina, Strait of, 7, 59
- Meteorium, 232
- Metz, *see* Aubrey Clement, Conrad; burghers of, 93; diocese of, 510
- Meuse river, 490
- Michael (of Murēze), archbishop of Arles 1202–1217: 309
- Michael V, Byzantine co-emperor 1041–1042: 633
- Michael VII, Byzantine emperor 1071–1078: 633
- Michael I (“Ducas”) Angelus Comnenus, cousin of Isaac II Angelus; despot of Epirus 1204–1214: 151, 201, 206, 208–210, 226, 236, 237, 240, 242; wife of, *see* — Melissena
- Michael II Angelus Comnenus, illegitimate son of Michael I; despot of Epirus 1236–1271: 226–228, 230, 246, 247, 257, 260, 261
- Michael IV Autorianus, Orthodox patriarch at Nicaea 1208–1214: 197, 201
- Michael Cantacuzenus, Byzantine official (d. 1264), 253, 254, 270
- Michael Choniates, brother of Nicetas; Orthodox metropolitan of Athens 1182–1215 (d. before 1220), 252
- Michael VIII Palaeologus, great-grandson of Alexius III Angelus; Byzantine co-emperor at Nicaea 1258–1261: 228–232, 246, 247, 761; emperor at Constantinople 1261–1282: 232, 248, 253–261, 367–370, 509, 584, 628, 726, 748, 761, 762
- Michael IX Palaeologus, son of Andronicus II; Byzantine co-emperor 1295–1320: 657; wife of, *see* Rita (Hetoumid)
- Michael Stryphnus, Byzantine admiral, 176
- Michael Tarchaniotes, Byzantine official, 260
- Michael the Syrian, Jacobite historian and patriarch (d. 1199), 529, 638, 643 note, 648
- Midi, 279, 283, 285, 287, 289, 294, 296, 297, 325
- Mignano, peace of (1139), 9, 11 note, 22
- Milan, 221, 352, 353, 445, 450; archbishop of, *see* Henry
- Milly, *see* Stephanie

- Milo (of Châtillon-sur-Marne and Nanteuil), bishop of Beauvais 1217-1234: 349, 403
- Milo, papal secretary and legate in Languedoc (d. 1209), 286, 287, 291
- al-Minā', 592
- Minden, diocese of, 340
- Minerve, 288, 290
- Minūchihr, Shirvān-Shāh 1027-1034: 664
- Mirepoix, 294 note
- Mistra: under Franks 1240-1262: 244, 248; under Greeks after 1262: 253, 254, 261, 262, 264, 267, 270, 272
- Mkhiṭar of Ayrivanḵ (Erivan), Armenian historian, 632
- Mleh, son of Leon I; Roupenid ruler of Cilician Armenia 1170-1175: 641-643
- Modon, 202, 208, 237-239; bishop of, 252
- Mohammed (Arabic, Muḥammad), founder of Islamic religion and community (d. 632), xx, 144, 461, 671
- Moissac, 295; abbot of, 295 note
- Monemvasia, 13 240, 244, 246, 248, 253; bishopric of, 252
- Möngke (Turkish, Mänggü), grandson of Genghis Khan; Great Khan of the Mongols 1251-1259: 568, 572, 573, 652, 653, 717, 718
- Mongolia, 573, 718, 722
- Mongols, Altaic people, xviii, 230, 507, 572, 581, 615, 665, 747, 754; in Central Asia, 652, 653, 668, 669, 671, 672, 674, 715-719; in Persia, 421, 422, 509, 568, 575, 576, 656, 662, 671-673, 703, 704, 717-726, 761; in Mesopotamia, 489, 571, 573, 578, 579, 662, 667, 684, 708, 726, 742, 744, 748, 749, 761; in Anatolia, 220, 223-225, 652, 683, 687-692, 709, 717, 725-732, 750, 751, 761, 762; in Cilicia, 655, 657, 658; in Syria, 508, 571-575, 582, 586, 589, 653-655, 657, 674, 694, 714, 717-719, 721, 726, 735, 744, 745, 751, 752, 755, 761, 762; in Europe, 220, 221; Great Khans of, *see* Genghis Khan 1206-1227, Ögödei 1227-1242, Güyük 1246-1248, Möngke 1251-1259, Kubilai 1260-1294; *see also* Chaghatai, Golden Horde, Ilkhans; map, 734
- Monophysites, *see* Jacobites
- Montaigu, *see* Margaret; lord of, 469
- Montaigu (-sur-Champeix), *see* Eustorgue, Garin, Peter
- Montauban, 295
- Montbéliard, *see* Eschiva, Odo, Walter
- Monte Cassino, abbey, 446
- Monte Cristo, 353
- Monte Croce, *see* Ricold
- Montelongo, *see* Gregory
- Montferrat, 166, 208; house of, 164, 165, 212, 215; marquis of, *see* William III, Conrad, Boniface II, William IV, Boniface III, *and also* Adelaide, Agnes, Alice, Demetrius, Mary, Renier, William
- "Longsword", Yolanda; marquise of, 164, 207
- Montfort (in Palestine), 448, 460, 542; *see also* Starkenburg
- Montfort (-l'Amaury): baron of, *see* Simon IV; counts of, 289, *and see* Amalric VI, John I; house of, 312, 319, 582, 586, *and see* Amicie, Guy (2), Humphrey, John, Philip, Simon
- Montgey, 293
- Montjoie, hill, 568
- Montmirail, *see* Reginald
- Montmorency, *see* Alice; baron of, 159
- Montmusart, 596, 597
- Montpellier, 288 note, 290, 291, 304, 305, 777; conference at (1211), 291, 292
- Montpensier, 319
- Montréal, 294 note, 315; lord of, 293
- Moors, *see* Moslems
- Moravia, duke of, 93
- Morea: under Greeks to 1205: 13, 135, 177, 190, 191, 235, 237; under Franks after 1205: 202, 206, 208, 229, 237-240, 243-274, 760; clergy of, 221; crusaders from, 493; primate of, 252; *see also* Achaea
- Morfia, daughter of Gabriel of Melitene; wife of Baldwin II of Jerusalem (after c. 1101), 632
- Morocco, 20, 23, 28; shaikh from, 711
- Moscow, 233
- Moslems (Arabic, al-Muslimūn; Saracens, Moors), members of Islamic community, xx, 85, 124, 144, 336, 348, 355, 396, 453, 457, 461, 462, 664, 665, 671, 675, 685, 686, 690, 702, 741, 747, 755, 758; in North Africa, 6 note, 21, 23, 25-28, 31, 515; in Sicily, 6, 8 note, 19, 22, 26, 28, 32-34, 337, 347, 361, 436, 439; in Spain, 21, 297, 386, 439, 466, 760; in Portugal, 50, 56, 395, 759; *and* Mongols, 715-721, 724, 726, 731; *see also* Islam
- Mosul, 663, 699, 701, 738; merchants from, 585; rulers of, *see* Zengids (1127-1234), Lu'lu' (1234-1259)
- Mosynopolis, 151, 179
- al-Mu'azzam 'Isā, Sharaf-ad-Dīn, son of al-'Ādil I Saif-ad-Dīn; Aiyūbid governor of Transjordan 1186-1193: 693; ruler 1193-1227: 695; governor of Damascus 1202-1218: 389-392, 395, 398, 531, 537, 539, 696, 698, 699; ruler 1218-1227: 401, 402, 408-411, 422, 424-426, 448-450, 452, 453, 462, 543, 673, 699-701, 705
- al-Mughīth 'Umar, Fakhr-ad-Dīn, son of aṣ-Ṣāliḥ Aiyūb; Aiyūbid governor of Damascus 1238-1239 (d. 1245), 706, 709
- al-Mughīth 'Umar, Fakhr-ad-Dīn, son of al-'Ādil II Abū-Bakr; Aiyūbid ruler of Transjordan 1250-1263: 712, 714, 742, 747
- Mughuls, Timurid dynasty in India 1526-1761 (1857): 668
- Muhadhdhib-ad-Dīn, vizir of Kai-Khusrau II (d. c. 1245), 692

- Muhammad, 'Alā'-ad-Dīn, son of Töküsh; Khorezm-Shāh 1200-1220: 670-672, 723
- Muhammad, an-Nāsir Nāsir-ad-Dīn, son of Kalavun and Aslun Khātūn; Mamluk sultan of Egypt and Syria 1293-1294, 1299-1309, 1310-1341: 753
- Muhammad I, Ḥafṣid emir of Tunisia 1249-1277: 513-517, 795
- Muhammad, Nāsir-ad-Dīn, son of Gümüşhtigin Ghāzī; Dānishmendid emir c. 1134-1140: 637, 676, 677
- Muhammad, son of Rāfi'; nominal ruler of Gabes (in 1147), 24
- Muhammad ibn-Maimūn, governor of the Balears (in 1122), 20 21
- Muhammad ibn-Tūmart, founder of the Muwaḥḥid sect (d. 1128), 28
- Mu'in-ad-Dīn ibn-ash-Shaikh; Egyptian general, 710
- Mu'in-ad-Dīn Sulaimān, Pervānch, son of Muhadhhib-ad-Dīn; Selchūkid chancellor 1261-1277: 727, 728
- al-Mu'izz, Fātimid caliph at Mahdiā 953-972, at Cairo 972-975: 17
- al-Mu'izz, Zīrid emir in Tunisia 1016-1062: 17, 18
- al-Mujāhid Shīrkūh, Ṣalāh-ad-Dīn, grandson of (al-Mansūr) Shīrkūh; Aiyūbid governor of Homs 1186-1193, ruler 1193-1240: 391, 478, 693, 696, 697, 701, 706, 708
- Münster, bishops of, *see* Hermann, Otto
- Muntaner, Raymond, Catalan chronicler (d. 1336?), 271
- Murābiṭs, Berber sect and dynasty in Morocco and Spain 1056-1147: 20, 28, *and see* 'Alī ibn-Yūsuf; in the Balears, 20, 33; in Tripoli, 23
- Muret, battle (1213), 287, 300-304, 760
- al-Mustaḍī, 'Abbāsīd caliph at Baghdad 1170-1180: 679
- al-Mustanṣir, grandson of an-Nāsir; 'Abbāsīd "caliph" at Cairo 1261-1261: 747
- al-Mustanṣir, Fātimid caliph at Cairo 1036-1094: 18
- al-Mustarshid, 'Abbāsīd caliph of Baghdad 1118-1135: 663, 677
- al-Musta'sim, great-grandson of an-Nāsir; 'Abbāsīd caliph at Baghdad 1242-1258: 506, 568, 674, 711, 738, 741, 744, 747, 761
- Muwaḥḥids, Berber sect and dynasty in North Africa and Spain 1130-1269: xxii, 28, 30-32, 327, 378, 379, *and see* Muhammad ibn-Tūmart, 'Abd-al-Mu'min 1130-1163, Yūsuf 1163-1184
- al-Muzaffar Ghāzī, Shihāb-ad-Dīn, son of al-'Ādil I Saif-ad-Dīn, Aiyūbid ruler of the Jazīra 1229-1244: 674, 700, 708
- al-Muzaffar Maḥmūd, Taqī-ad-Dīn, son of al-Mansūr Muḥammad; Aiyūbid ruler of Hamah 1229-1243: 411, 478, 550, 703-705, 707, 709, 711, 712
- al-Muzaffar 'Umar, Taqī-ad-Dīn, nephew of Saladin; Aiyūbid governor of Hamah, 1179-1191: 67, 693, 714
- Myconos, 238
- Myriokephalon, pass, 111; battle (1176), 137, 140, 141, 679
- Nablus, 389, 390, 454, 552, 698, 701, 702, 706, 710, 713 note; attacks on, 553, 561, 709, 714; emir of, 408
- Nahr Na'mān, stream, 390
- Nain, 390
- Najm-ad-Dīn, Assassin master in Syria (to 1270, d. 1274), 749
- Namur: count of, 213; marquise of, 221, 222
- Nangis, *see* William
- Nanteuil (-le-Haudoin), *see* Andrew, Milo, Philip
- Naples, 58, 61, 117, 256, 359, 361, 366; archbishop of, *see* Philip; court of, 259, 261, 269, 274; honor of, 8 note; kingdom of, 261, 262, 269, 372, 591; kings of, *see* Charles I of Anjou 1268-1285, Charles II 1285-1309; *see also* Two Sicilies
- Narbonne, 291, 303-305, 307, 308; archbishops of, *see* Arnold Amalric, Peter, William; duke of, 308; viscount of, 303
- Narjot I of Toucy, regent of Romania 1228-1231, 1238-1241: 216; daughter of, 244, 245, 255
- Narjot II of Toucy, son of Philip; grand admiral of Naples (d. after 1288), 591; wife of, *see* Lucy (of Antioch)
- Narzotto dalle Carceri, triarch of southern Euboea 1247-1264: 245; wife of, *see* Felicia (dalle Carceri)
- an-Nasawī, secretary to Jalāl-ad-Dīn Mangubertī (d. after 1241), 672
- an-Nāsir, son of al-Mustaḍī; 'Abbāsīd caliph at Baghdad 1180-1225: 336, 410, 421, 422, 529, 665-667, 670-672, 688, 696, 700, 760
- an-Nāsir Dā'ūd, Ṣalāh-ad-Dīn, son of al-Mu'azzam 'Isā; Aiyūbid ruler of Damascus 1227-1229: 453, 459, 701, 702; of Transjordan 1227-1249 (d. 1259): 471, 477-480, 483, 546, 547, 553, 561-564, 674, 704-707, 709-711, 741 note
- an-Nāsir Kilij Arslan, Ṣalāh-ad-Dīn, son of al-Mansūr Muḥammad; Aiyūbid ruler of Hamah 1221-1229: 701, 703
- an-Nāsir Yūsuf, Ṣalāh-ad-Dīn, son of al-'Azīz Muḥammad; Aiyūbid ruler of Aleppo 1236-1260: 493, 505, 550, 553, 564, 704, 710-712; of Damascus and Baalbek 1250-1260 (d. 1261): 505, 507, 567, 712-714, 741-743, 745-747
- Nāsir-ad-Dīn Ṭūsī, Persian scholar (d. 1274), 721
- Naṣr, Assassin master in Syria (in 1194), 528
- Naṣr-ad-Dīn Khoja, semi-legendary folk hero (d. c. 1285), 732
- Nassau, count of, 92, 94, *and see* Walram

- Naumburg (an der Saale), 777; and Zeitz, bishops of, *see* Berthold, Engelhard
- Naupactus, 273
- Nauplia, 202, 237, 240, 241, 259, 263
- Navarino, 239, 261
- Navarre, 270, 470; kings of, *see* Sancho VI 1150-1194, Theobald IV 1234-1253, Theobald V 1253-1270; princess of, *see* Berengaria
- Navarre (of Acqs), bishop of Couserans 1208?-1211?, papal legate in Languedoc, 285
- Naxos, 192, 202, 238, 239, 272; duke of, 271, *and see* Archipelago, dukes of
- Nazareth, 745; under Moslems 1187-1229: 532, 697; under Franks 1229-1263: 455, 464, 574; under Moslems after 1263: 583, 583, 588, 616; archbishop of, 389
- Negroes, 134, 736
- Negroponte, island, *see* Euboea
- Negroponte, town, 210, 229, 232, 238 note, 245, 251, 257; bishopric of, 252; lordship of, 239, 240; Venetians at, 240, 242, 245, 259, 272
- Neo-Manichean, 329 note, *and see* Albigensian heresy
- Neocastro, *see* Bartholomew
- Neopatras, 213, 257; dukes of, *see* Angelus "Comnenus"
- Neophytus, hermit (d. 1220), 601, 602, 624, 626
- Neophytus, Orthodox archbishop of Cyprus c. 1220-1222: 626
- Nephtin, 534, 544, 587, 591, 593; lord of, 534
- Nersēs ("the Gracious"), brother of Gregory III; Armenian catholicus 1166-1173: 641
- Nersēs of Lampron, son of Ōshin II; Armenian archbishop of Tarsus (d. 1198), 645, 646 note, 648 note, 649
- Nesle, *see* John, Ralph (2)
- Nestorians, Christian sect, 507, 572, 623, 668, 715; 720-722, 745; patriarch of, 656
- Netherlands, crusaders from, 115; *see also* Low Countries
- Neuenburg, *see* Markward
- Neuilly (-sur-Marne), *see* Fulk
- Nevers, counts of, 54, 6c, 212, 287, 289, 417, 469, 481, 516
- Nicaea, city, 151, 197, 201, 209, 218, 760; "duchy" of, 192; patriarchs of, *see* Michael IV Autorianus 1208-1214, Manuel I Sarantenus 1217-1222, Germanus 1222-1240, Arsenius (of Apollonia) 1255-1259
- Nicaea, empire, 151, 209, 211, 214, 216, 217, 223-228, 230, 244, 466, 570, 682-684, 688, 726, 760, 761; emperors of, *see* Byzantine emperors, at Nicaea 1208-1261
- Nicephorus I, Byzantine emperor 802-811: 204
- Nicephorus Angelus Comnenus, son of Michael II; despot of Epirus 1271-1296: 227, 260, 261, 263, 266, 267; wives of, *see* Maria Lascaris, Anna Cantacuzena
- Nicephorus Melissenus, Byzantine caesar (in 1081, d. 1104), 165
- Nicetas Choniates, Byzantine historian (d. c. 1215), 13, 139, 141-143, 150, 171, 185, 192, 204
- Nicetas II Muntanes, Orthodox patriarch of Constantinople 1186-1189: 96, 103, 109
- Nicholas (Maltraversi), bishop of Reggio (nell' Emilia) 1211-1243: 421
- Nicholas (of Claromonte), cardinal-bishop of Tusculum 1219-1227: 438
- Nicholas, chaplain to Richard I (in 1191), bishop of Le Mans 1214-1216: 63
- Nicholas (of Castro Arquato), Latin patriarch of Constantinople c. 1234-1251: 225, 466
- Nicholas III (John Gaetano Orsini), pope 1277-1280: 368, 369, 762
- Nicholas IV (Jerome Masci), pope 1288-1292: 593, 594, 617, 722, 762
- Nicholas Canabus, Byzantine pretender (d. 1204), 181, 182
- Nicholas Falier, Venetian bailie at Negroponte 1280-1282: 259
- Nicholas Lorgne, master of the Hospital 1277-1284: 587
- Nicholas of Choisy, French sergeant, 614
- Nicholas of Cologne, leader of Children's Crusade, 331, 333-335, 760; father of, 335
- Nicholas of Hannapes, patriarch of Jerusalem 1288-1291: 597
- Nicholas II of St. Omer, son of Bela, lord of half of Thebes 1258-1294, bailie of Achaea 1287-1289: 259, 261, 265; wives of, *see* Mary of Antioch, Anna Angelina Comnena
- Nicholas III of St. Omer, nephew of Nicholas II; lord of Thebes 1299-1311, bailie of Achaea 1300-1302, 1304-1307 (d. 1314), 265-268
- Nicholas Querini, Venetian banker, 222
- Nicholas I Sanudo, son of William I; duke of the Archipelago 1323-1241: 271
- Nicholas Tiepolo, Venetian naval commander, 593
- Nicomedia, 205, 209, 215, 216
- Nicosia, 64, 589, 602 note, 604, 606, 611, 612, 623 note, 625; archbishops of, 389, 413 note, 596, 609, 621, 624, 625, 628; cathedral of, 628; high court of, *see under* Cyprus; viscount of, 620
- Nicotera, 20
- Nikiz, 106, *and see* Hafsa
- Nikli, 246, 254, 258, 272; barony of, 250
- Nile river, 738, 747, 778; and fifth crusade: 397-402, 404-415, 423-426, 539, 609; and crusade of 1249: 492, 493, 495-502; delta of: 35, 36, 410, 411, 425, 444, 493, 496-498, 531, 537, 593
- Nimburg, 778; count of, 92, 93
- Nîmes, bishop of, 307
- Niphon, Bogomil monk (in 1143), 144
- Nish, 91, 93, 99, 100, 210

- Nisi, 265
 Nisibin, 706
 Nizām-al-Mulk, vizir of Selchūkids in Iran (d. 1092), 736
 Nizām-al-Mulk Muḥammad, al-Harawī, vizir of Khorezm-Shāh Muḥammad, 671
 Nizāmī of Ganja, Persian poet (d. c. 1202), 663
 Nonancourt, 49
 Normandy, 47, 48, 61, 70, 79, 155, 491; crusaders from, 65, 74; duke of, 54; seneschal of, *see* William fitz Ralph
 Normans, in Egypt, 35; in England, 621; in Germany, 11; in Greece, 11, 14, 15, 37, 125, 127, 136, 138, 146, 149; in Italy, 5, 6, 8, 117, 125, 132, 345; in Normandy, 53; in North Africa, 9, 16, 18–33; in Sicily, *see under* Sicily; in Syria, 5, 10, 126, 133
 Norpert, 650
 North Africa, 42, 339, 514; Sicilians in, 4, *and see* Normans; *see also* Tunisia
 Norway, 120; king of, *see* Haakon V 1217–1263
 Novara, 610, *and see* Philip
 Novgorod, chronicle of, 153 note
 Noyers, *see* Hugh
 Nubia, 22, 749, 750, 752
 Numidia, 16, 22
 Nuño Sancho, count of Roussillon 1222?–1241: 318 note
 Nūr-ad-Din Maḥmūd, son of Zengi; Zengid ruler of Syria 1146–1174: 34, 39, 140, 638–643, 678, 679, 694
 Nuremberg, 91, 434; treaty of (1188), 91, 92, 95, 97, 101, 104, 107, 108
 Nuṣairī mountains, 559, *and see* Jabal Anṣāriyah
 Nymphæum, 209, 218, 230
 Oberto of Biandrate, regent of Thessalonica 1207–1209: 206–208, 210, 212, 214
 Oberto Pallavicini, nephew of Guy; tyrant of Cremona (1250–1266), of Piacenza (1254–1257, 1260–1266), etc. (d. 1269), 363
 Ochrida, 212; archbishop of, 214
 Ochrida, Lake, 247
 Octavian (Conti), cardinal-deacon 1182–1189, cardinal-bishop of Ostia 1189–1206, papal legate in France, 58, 157
 Octavian (Ubal dini), cardinal-deacon 1244–1273, papal legate in Italy, 362
 Octavian Querini, Venetian elector (in 1204), 189 note
 Odo (Rigaud), archbishop of Rouen 1248–1275: 341
 Odo (of Sully), bishop of Paris 1196–1208: 284
 Odo III, son of Hugh III; duke of Burgundy 1192–1218: 287, 289, 290, 385
 Odo (le Queue), seneschal of Carcassonne, 323
 Odo of Champlitte, son of Hugh I of Champagne; viscount of Dijon (in 1202), 158 note
 Odo of Châteauroux, cardinal-bishop of Tusculum 1244–1273: 490, 560 note, 627, 628
 Odo of Montbéliard, nephew (or son) of Walter; constable of Jerusalem 1218–1244: 447, 452, 472, 475–477, 545; bailie 1222–1226: 444, 541, 542; co-bailie 1228–1228, 1229–1231: 546, 548; baronial co-bailie 1233–1243: 550, 551, 559, 560; lord of Tiberias 1240–1244: 564
 Odo Poilechien, nephew of Martin IV; Angevin bailie at Acre 1282–1286: 588, 590
 Oenoë, 200
 Oghuz, Turkoman tribe, 662, 669, 670; *see also* Selchūkids
 Ögödai, son of Genghis Khan; Great Khan of the Mongols 1227–1242: 717
 Oignies, *see* Mary
 Oldenburg, *see* Wilbrand; count of, *see* Christian
 Olena, bishop of, 252
 Oliver (Plantagenet), illegitimate son of John of England (d. 1219), 402
 Oliver (Saxo), scholasticus of Cologne, bishop of Paderborn 1224–1225, cardinal-bishop (of Sabina) 1225–1227: 381, 389, 392, 394, 396, 399–402, 407, 411, 414–416, 418, 420, 422, 424, 425, 444
 Öljaitu (Khodābanda “Muḥammad”), son of Arghun; Il-khan of Persia 1304–1316: 719
 Olympia, 254
 Opizon (Fieschi), nephew of Innocent IV; Latin patriarch of Antioch 1247–1268 (titular 1268–1292), 566, 575
 Oreus, 235, 239, 245, 257
 Orlando Pescia, Italian knight, 238
 Orléans, 341
 Orontes river, 533, 577, 649, 696
 Orsinis, Apulian dynasty at Cephalonia 1194–1324: *see* Maio 1194–1238, Richard 1238–1304
 Orthodox Christians (“Greeks”), sect, xviii, 87; in Byzantine empire, 15, 96, 97, 196, 217, 218, 232, 233, 369; in Latin empire, 196, 211; in Frankish Greece, 241, 252; in Cyprus, 608, 623–628; in Anatolia, 632, 683, 726; *see also* Greek church
 Orvieto, bishop of, 228; treaty of (1281), 260
 Ōshin I, Heṭoumid lord of Lampron 1073–1110: 633, 634
 Ōshin II, grandson of Ōshin I; Heṭoumid lord of Lampron (d. 1168), 639, 641
 Osma, bishop of, 283
 Osnabrück, bishop of, *see* Arnold
 Ostia, cardinal-bishops of, *see* Peter Damian, Octavian, Ugolino
 Ostrovo, 226, 227
 Othon de Cicon, nephew of Othon de la Roche; lord of Carystus 1250–1278: 246

- Othon de la Roche, lord of Athens 1250-1225 (d. 1234), 238-242, 248; wife of, *see* Isabel (de Ray)
- Otranto, 446, 447, 451
- Otranto, Strait of, 255
- Öttingen, count of, *see* Conrad
- Otto, archbishop of Genoa 1203-1239: 609
- Otto, half-brother of Conrad III of Germany; bishop of Freising 1138-1158: 11
- Otto (of Oldenburg), bishop of Münster 1204-1218: 389
- Otto (of Henneberg), bishop of Speyer 1188-1200: 93
- Otto (of Vaudemont), bishop of Toul 1192-1197: 120
- Otto (of Lippe), bishop of Utrecht 1215-1228: 389
- Otto I, count of Guelders 1182-1207: 50, 51, 65, 115
- Otto VII (of Andechs), son of Berthold IV; duke of Meran 1204-1234, count of (upper) Burgundy 1208-1234, margrave of Istria 1215-1230: 387, 388 note, 389, 431
- Otto IV of Brunswick, son of Henry "the Lion"; Welf emperor of Germany 1201 (crowned 1209)-1211 (d. 1218), 171, 291, 297, 378, 382, 384, 431, 432
- Otto of Grandison, Swiss commander (d. 1328), 595-597
- Ottomans (Osmanli), Turkish people, 233, 270, 621 note, 628, 721, 725, 731, 732; sultans, *see* Sulaimān I
- Outremer, 5, 34, 38, 41, 156, 161, 168, 559, 560, 562, 564, 566-569, 571, 598, 611, 738; *see also* Palestine, Syria
- Oxus river, 568
- Pachymeres, George, Byzantine historian (d. c. 1310), 231, 252
- Paderborn, 381
- Padua, 363
- Pagan II, lord of Haifa (d. c. 1198), 524
- Pagouran, son of Sempad; Heṭoumid lord of Babarōn (after 1152, d. after 1198), 643, 644
- Pairis, abbot of, 164
- Pakrad, brother of Kogh Vasil; Armenian lord of Cyrrhus (to 1117), 636
- Palaeologus, Byzantine imperial dynasty at Nicaea 1258-1261 and Constantinople 1261-1453: 143, 146, *and see* Michael VIII 1258-1282, Andronicus II 1282-1328, Michael IX (1295-1320), John V 1341-1391 (interrupted), John VIII 1425-1448; *see also* Constantine, John (2)
- Palear, *see* Walter
- Palermo: before 1189: 7, 8 note, 13, 19, 21, 24, 27, 28, 30, 31 note, 32, 35, 38; after 1189: 41, 119, 339; archbishop of, 449
- Palestine, or the Holy Land, 675; before 1189: 15, 37; 1189-1243: 52, 60, 62, 64, 76, 82, 85, 87, 119, 147, 158 note, 383-386, 394, 396, 402, 410, 432, 434, 441, 443, 449, 455, 457, 458, 464, 484, 539, 552, 603, 604, 608, 696, 699, 701, 702, 706, 707; 1243-1291: 226, 363, 369, 373, 490, 492, 504-509, 518, 567, 573, 709, 710, 713, 717, 718, 735, 742, 743, 745, 756, 761; as goal of crusades, 4, 284, 285, 292, 298, 325, 326, 345-350, 352, 357, 362, 653, 654; of first, 126; of third, 46, 47, 50, 54, 55, 61, 63, 148; of 1197: 118, 122, 149; of fourth, 154, 155, 163, 169, 172 note, 174, 175, 177, 180, 290, 377, 531; of children's, 335; of fifth, 300, 308, 315, 378, 380, 395, 428, 430, 433, 437; of Frederick II's, 438, 461, 462, 611; of 1239: 465-473, 480, 483; of Louis IX's, 341, 497, 512, 513, 515, 581; of prince Edward's, 517, 583, 762; as goal of pilgrims, 6, 33, 38, 331, 334, 379, 600; map of, 520
- Pallavicini, *see* Albert, Guy, Isabel, Oberto
- Pamiers, 295, 318; statutes of (1212), 296
- Pantelleria, 21, 24
- Papacy (or "Rome"), 149, 371-375, 494, 518, 565, 683; and Normans, 5, 8, 33; and early Hohenstaufens, 88, 104, 117, 345-347; and fourth crusade, 154, 155, 161, 180; and Latin empire, 213, 215, 227, 232; and Frankish Greece, 239, 243, 252; and Frederick II, xviii, 348-358, 431; and later Hohenstaufens, 358-367, 509; and Angevins, 363-371, 509, 584; and Cyprus, 613, 621, 623; and Cilicia, 647, 650; and Mongols, 722; *see also* Latin church and individual Popes
- Paphlagonia, 133
- Paphos, 610, 615 note, 625; bishop of, 624
- Paris, 76, 221, 224, 308, 321, 330, 336, 337, 467, 492, 512; archdeacon of, 304, 326; bishops of, 284, 292, 348, 403; doctors of, 385; livres of, 222, 491 note, 504; mark of, 56; peace of, (1229): 287, 296, 319, 323, 324, 761; (1259): 322; region around, 158, 290, 296, *and see* Île de France; Temple in, 383, 386
- Parma, 355, *and see* Albert, John
- Parnon, 240, 244
- Paroikoi (Greek, peasant tenants), 129, 142, 143, 241, 251, 622
- Paros, 192, 239
- Parthenon, at Athens, 208, 241
- Partzapert, lord of, 639
- Passau, advocate of, 93; bishops of, *see* Dietpold, Wolfer, Ulrich
- Passavant, barony of, 250, 253, 258
- Patmos, 128
- Patras, 237, 252; archbishopric of, 252; barony of, 250
- Patras, Gulf of, 236, 237
- Patriarchs, patriarchate, *see under* Antioch, Constantinople, Jerusalem, and Jacobites, Nestorians
- Patti, 21; bishop of, 442
- Paul Gradenigo, Venetian bailie at Negroponte 1254-1256: 245

- Paul of Segni, brother of Lucienne; bishop of Tripoli 1261—before 1285: 585, 587
- Paulician heresy, heretics, 144, 203, 204
- Pazouni, brother of Ōshin I (d. after 1098), 634
- Pechenegs, Turkic people, 125, 131
- Pegae, 205, 209, 217
- Péguilhan, *see* Aimery
- Peking, 716, 718, 719, 723
- Pelagius (Galvani), cardinal-deacon 1205—1210, cardinal-priest 1210—1213, cardinal-bishop of Albano 1213—1230: 211, 438, 442, 625, 627 note; papal legate on fifth crusade, xvii, 380, 402, 403, 405—407, 409—426, 430, 435—437, 462, 539—541, 609
- Pelagonia, 209, 217; battle (1259), 228, 229, 247, 761
- Peloponnesus, *see* Morea
- Pembroke, earl of, 482
- Penne-d'Agenais, 295
- Pera, 178, 180
- Perche, 159, *and see* Stephen; counts of, 49, 159, 164
- Pergamum, 209
- Périgord, 303, 306, *and see* Armand
- Pernis, 102, *and see* Petrich
- Perpignan, 372
- Perpyriarii* (Greek, freedmen) 622
- Persia, 192, 421, 509, 671, 689, 703, 719, 721, 724, 731, 732, 761; Mongols of, *see* Il-khans; *see also* Iran; map of, 660
- Persian language, transliteration and nomenclature, xxii
- Pertous, 639, 650
- Perugia, 384
- Pervāneh* (Persian, chancellor), 686, 727, 728
- Peter ("the Venerable"), abbot of Cluny 1122—1156: 12 note, 16
- Peter, abbot of Locedio, Latin patriarch of Antioch 1209—1217: 173, 536, 538
- Peter, archbishop of Brindisi 1182—1196?: 119
- Peter (of Limoges), archbishop of Caesarea (before 1217—after 1229), 389, 457, 458, 545
- Peter (of Ameil), archbishop of Narbonne 1226—1245: 323
- Peter (of Corbeil), archbishop of Sens 1200—1222: 287
- Peter (of Nemours), bishop of Paris 1208—1219: 292, 403
- Peter, bishop of Raab (before 1206—1218), 389
- Peter (of Barjsey), bishop of Toul 1165—1192: 92, 104
- Peter (des Roches), bishop of Winchester 1205—1238: 445, 542
- Peter, count of Vendôme 1239—1249: 493
- Peter II, king of Aragon 1196—1213: 287—292, 296—302, 304, 760
- Peter III, son of James I; king of Aragon 1276—1285, of Sicily 1282—1285: 260, 343, 370—372, 375, 751; wife of, *see* Constance (Hohenstaufen)
- Peter, brother of Asen; Vlach tsar of Bulgaria 1196—1197: 100, 102, 107, 109, 146, 148, 201
- Peter Barbo, Venetian bailie at Negroponte (in 1216), 242, 245
- Peter Capocci, cardinal-deacon 1244—1259, papal legate in Calabria, 356, 359
- Peter Capuano (of Amalfi), cardinal-deacon 1192—1201, cardinal-priest 1201—1214, papal legate in France and Syria, 155—157, 173, 175, 196, 534, 535
- Peter Chappie, Cypriote knight, 610
- Peter Damian, cardinal-bishop (of Ostia) 1058—c. 1066 (d. 1072), 347
- Peter Embriaco, son of Guy II; lord of Jubail 1282—c. 1298 (d. after 1307), 593
- Peter Flotte, French chancellor 1300—1302: 266
- Peter of Amiens, French baron, 160
- Peter of Angoulême, Latin patriarch of Antioch 1201—1208: 533, 535, 536
- Peter of Benevento, papal legate in Languedoc (d. 1216?), 303—306
- Peter of Bracieux, French baron, ruler of Lopadium 1204—1209: 160, 192, 209
- Peter of Castelnaud, archdeacon of Maguelonne, papal legate in Languedoc (d. 1208), 277, 283—286, 291, 760
- Peter of Courtenay, grandson of Louis VI of France; count of Nevers and Auxerre 1184—1192, Latin emperor of Romania 1217—1218 (d. 1219?), 54, 60, 212, 213, 242, 760; wife of, *see* Yolanda (of Hainault)
- Peter I of Dreux, son of Robert II; count of Brittany 1213—1237, earl of Richmond 1219—1237, lord of La Garnache and Montaigu 1235—1241? (d. 1250), 219, 319, 466—470, 474, 475, 477, 481, 483, 484; wives of, *see* Alice (of Brittany), Margaret of Montaigu
- Peter of Les Vaux-de-Cernay, nephew of abbot Guy; French chronicler (d. 1219?), 277 note, 291, 292, 299, 304, 305, 327
- Peter of Montaigu (-sur-Champeix), brother of Garin; master of the Temple 1219—1229: 413, 422, 424, 425, 427, 438, 452, 454, 546, 625
- Peter of Pola, doge of Venice 1130—1148: 10
- Peter of Sargines, archbishop of Tyre 1235—1244: 563
- Peter of Vieille Bride (Brioude), master of the Hospital 1239—1242: 463, 472, 475, 484, 553
- Peter Roger, lord of Cabaret (to 1211), 292
- Peter Vidal, Provençal troubadour (d. 1215?), 166
- Peter Ziani, doge of Venice 1205—1229: 193, 208, 239, 240, 387
- Peterborough, abbot of, 45 note
- Petrich, 102
- Philadelphia, 98, 110; "duchy" of, 192

- Philaretus (Filardos, or Vahram), Armenian lord in Anatolia (d. 1085), 632
- Philip (of Heinsberg), archbishop of Cologne 1167-1191: 90
- Philip (Capece Minutolo), archbishop of Naples 1288-1301: 262
- Philip II ("Augustus"), son of Louis VII and Adela; Capetian king of France 1180-1223: 116, 330, 439, 459, 523, 536; and third crusade, xvii, 40, 41, 47-49, 53-61, 63, 65-71, 76, 79-82, 85, 88, 89, 91, 93, 148, 488, 522, 601, 792; and fourth crusade, 154, 155, 157, 158 note, 165, 171; and Albigensian crusade, 283-287, 291, 295 note, 297, 300, 305, 308, 312-316; and fifth crusade, 378, 380, 382; nephews of, 159; wives of, *see* Isabel (of Hainault), Agnes (of Andecchs)
- Philip III ("the Bold"), son of Louis IX; Capetian king of France 1270-1285: 371, 372, 375, 516-518, 751, 762; wife of, *see* Isabel (of Aragon)
- Philip IV ("the Fair"), son of Philip III; Capetian king of France 1285-1314: 266, 270, 372, 374, 375, 590, 722, 723, 762
- Philip, son of Frederick I; Hohenstaufen duke of Swabia and Alsace 1196-1208, king in Germany 1197-1208: 119, 149, 166, 168-174, 185, 378; wife of, *see* Irene Angelina
- Philip Fontana, archbishop of Ravenna 1251-c. 1272, papal legate in Lombardy, 363
- Philip Mouskes, Flemish chronicler (d. 1283), 219
- Philip I of Alsace, count of Flanders 1168-1191: 47, 54, 55, 61, 68, 70, 93
- Philip of Anjou, son of Charles I (d. 1277), 256, 258, 259; wife of, *see* Isabel of Villehardouin
- Philip of Antioch, son of Bohemond IV; prince of Cilician Armenia 1222-1224 (d. 1225), 541, 550, 565, 651; wife of, *see* Isabel (Roupenid)
- Philip of Courtenay, son of Latin emperor Peter and Yolanda; count of Namur 1218-1226: 213
- Philip of Courtenay, son of Latin emperor Baldwin II; titular emperor of Romania 1273-1285: 225, 229, 243
- Philip of Dreux, brother of count Robert II; bishop of Beauvais 1175-1217: 50, 66, 80
- Philip of Ibelin, son of Balian II; bailie of Cyprus 1218-1227: 605, 610, 611, 619, 623
- Philip of Ibelin, son of Guy; bailie of Jerusalem 1286-1289: 590
- Philip of Lagonesse (Gonesse), marshal of Sicily, bailie of Achaea 1280-1282: 259, 260
- Philip of Mahdia, Sicilian admiral (d. 1153), 29
- Philip of Maugastel, imperialist baron, 550
- Philip of Montfort, son of Guy and Helvis; lord of La Ferté-Alais (to 1240), 469, 472; of Toron 1240-1266: 477, 485, 551, 553, 554, 559, 574; of Tyre 1243-1270: 554, 559, 560, 562, 563, 568, 569, 576, 580-582; wife of, *see* Mary (of Antioch)
- Philip of Nanteuil, French crusader, 474
- Philip of Novara, Lombard chronicler and crusader, 477, 553, 559, 610, 613, 618, 619
- Philip of Savoy, nephew of Amadeo V; count of Piedmont (d. 1334), prince of Achaea 1301-1306: 265-269, 273, 762; wives of, 268, *and see* Isabel of Villehardouin
- Philip I of Taranto, son of Charles II; Angevin prince of Taranto 1294-1332, of Achaea 1306-1313: 263, 264, 266-270, 273; wife of, *see* Thamar (of Epirus)
- Philip of Toucy, brother of Narjot I; regent of Romania 1241-1251: 226
- Philippa (Filibe), daughter of Roupen III; 2nd wife of Theodore I Lascaris, 650
- Philippopolis, 192, 202-204, 206; third crusade at, 94-97, 101, 102, 104-107, 110, 148
- Philomelium, 111
- Photius, Greek merchant, 264
- Piacenza, 334
- Pian del Carpine, *see* John
- Picardy, 159, 341; knight from, 270
- Piedmont, 266, 268; count of, 265
- Pilgrim Mountain, 478, 592
- Pinarhisar, 215
- Piriska (of Hungary, "Irene"), wife of John II Comnenus 1104-1134: 127, 131, 134
- Pisa, 334; archbishop of, 66; crusaders from, 65, 68, 69, 409, 412, 503, 596; government of, 8, 9, 30, 104, 109, 125, 132, 138, 155, 161, 338 note, 549; merchants from, in Africa: 27 note; in Byzantine empire: 132, 162; in Cyprus: 623; in Sicily, 436; in Syria: 381, 452, 524, 525, 538, 547, 560, 568-570, 590; ships from, 51, 53, 96, 109, 161, 171, 218, 219, 230, 243, 353, 759; trade with, 30, 524, 697
- Plaisance of Antioch, daughter of Bohemond V and Lucienne; 3rd wife of Henry I 1250-1253, regent of Cyprus and Jerusalem 1253-1261, 1st wife of Balian of Ibelin 1254-1258: 567, 569, 570, 580, 606
- Plantagenets, Angevin dynasty in England 1154-1485: 59, 67, 155, 279, *and see* Henry II 1154-1189, Richard I 1189-1199, John 1199-1216, Henry III 1216-1272, Edward I 1272-1307; *see also* Alice, Arthur, Edmund, Geoffrey, Isabel, Joan, Oliver, Richard of Cornwall
- Platamon, 213, 238
- Po river, valley of, 334
- Podandus, 634
- Poemanenum, 209, 215
- Poitiers, 268, *and see* Raymond; count of, *see* Alphonse; diocese of, 466
- Poitou, 48, 63, 470, 779; count of, 48; crusaders from, 52, 56, 60, 74

- Pola, *see* Peter
- Poland, 715, 717; clergy of, 357
- Political crusades, xvii, 343-348, 358, 369, 370, 372-375; against Languedoc, 282 note, 345, *and see* Albigensian crusade; against Markward, 346, 347, 349, 759; against Frederick II, 348-358, 761; against Conrad IV, 359, 360, 761; against Manfred, 255, 343, 361-366, 373, 762; against Ezzelino, 363; against Byzantines, 365; against Conradin, 366, 762; against Peter III, 343, 371, 372, 375, 763; against the Colonnas, 374
- Pondikos, 237, 249
- Pons of Capdolh (Chapdeuil), troubadour (d. c. 1190), 382
- Pons "of the Cross", master of Hungarian Templars, 387
- Ponthieu, count of, 53
- Pontus, *see* Pontic Heraclea
- Popes, *see* Papacy, *and* Leo IX 1049-1054, Gregory VII 1073-1085, Urban II 1088-1099, Gelasius II 1118-1119, Calixtus II 1119-1124, Honorius II 1124-1130, Innocent II 1130-1143, Eugenius III 1145-1153, Hadrian IV 1154-1159, Alexander III 1159-1181, Lucius III 1181-1185, Urban III 1185-1187, Gregory VIII 1187-1189, Clement III 1187-1191, Celestine III 1191-1198, Innocent III 1198-1216, Honorius III 1216-1227, Gregory IX 1227-1241, Celestine IV 1241-1241, Innocent IV 1243-1254, Alexander IV 1254-1261, Urban IV 1261-1264, Clement IV 1265-1268, Gregory X 1271-1276, John XXI 1276-1277, Nicholas III 1277-1280, Martin IV 1281-1285, Honorius IV 1285-1287, Nicholas IV 1288-1292, Celestine V 1294-1294, Boniface VIII 1294-1303, Benedict XI 1303-1304, Clement V 1305-1314, John XXII 1316-1334; *see also* Anti-popes
- Poppo VI, nephew of bishop Otto of Speyer; count of Henneberg 1157-1190: 92, 115
- Port-de-Jonc, 261
- Porto, cardinal-bishops of, *see* Benedict, Conrad, Romanus
- Portugal, 16, 120, 395; infante of, 348; king of, *see* Sancho I 1185-1211; third crusade in, 50, 56, 58, 115, 759
- Posquères, *see* William
- Potenza, 15
- Pozzuoli, 30, 447
- Prague, bishop of, *see* Henry
- Premonstratensians, order, 156, 252, 383, 384, 628
- Prespa, Lake, 192, 247
- Pressburg, 93, 94
- Prester John, legendary Christian ruler, 669, 721
- Prilep, 217
- Principate, *see* Salerno; *see also* Richard
- Printsa, 254
- Probaton, 105
- Procida, *see* John
- Pronoia (Greek), 129, 131, 141-143, 145, 150, 165, 192
- Prosek, 205, 208, 210, 213
- Protovestiaros (Greek, chamberlain), 190, 249, 266
- Provence, 311, 313 note, 318, 369, 508, *and see* Margaret; counts of, 259, 318; crusaders from, 167, 238, 409; marquise of, 279, 303, 307, 309, 311, 315, 318, 320, 322, 323; merchants from, 560, 568, 569, 623 note; troubadours from, 166
- Prussians, Baltic people, 121, 466
- Ptolemy of Lucca, Italian chronicler (d. after 1312), 583 note
- Puylaurens, 294 note, 333, *and see* William
- Pyramus river, 635, 638
- Pyrenees mountains, 300, 304, 309, 311, 372; region north of, 48, 288, 301, 303, 323
- Qādī (Arabic, magistrate), 26, 456, 458, 594, 656, 702, 730
- al-Qā'im, 'Abbāsīd caliph 1031-1075: 18
- Qaimariyah, Kurdish regiments, 740, 741
- Qal'at al-Bahr, 448, 542, 598
- Qal'at ar-Rūm, *see* Hromgla
- Qal'at Ja'bar, 696
- Qal'at Najm, 696
- Qāqūn, 582
- Quercy, 287 note, 293, 303, 304, 312, 315, 318, 320
- Querfurt, *see* Conrad
- Querini, *see* John, Nicholas, Octavian
- al-Qulai'ah, 576, 697, 780
- Quşair, 578; lord of, *see* William
- Raab, bishop of, 389
- Raban, 637, 698; lords of, 632, 638
- Rabban Şaumā, Nestorian ambassador (d. 1294), 656
- Radulf (Ralph) of Caen, French chronicler (d. after 1108), 633
- Rāfi', Hilālī ruler of Gabes (in 1117), 20, 24
- Ragusa, archbishop of, *see* Bernard
- Raiy, 670
- Ralph, bishop of Lydda and Ramla (d. 1244), 563
- Ralph I, count of Clermont (de P'oise) 1162-1191: 53
- Ralph (of Domfront), Latin patriarch of Antioch 1135-1139: 10
- Ralph, lord of Fougères, 469
- Ralph, brother of Hugh; titular lord of Tiberias 1197-1220: 529, 530, 534, 610
- Ralph, patriarch of Jerusalem 1191-1194: 525
- Ralph de Diceto, English chronicler (d. c. 1202), 65, 157
- Ralph fitz Godfrey, chamberlain to Richard I (d. 1191), 64
- Ralph of Coggeshall, English chronicler (d. after 1227), 157
- Ralph of Mérencourt, patriarch of Jerusalem

- 1214-1225: 438, 440, 541; and fifth crusade, 383, 388-390, 392-394, 400, 414, 609
- Ralph of Nesle, count of Soissons 1180-1237: 313
- Ralph of Nesle (or "of Soissons"), son of count Ralph; bailie of Jerusalem 1243-1243: 474, 475, 485, 553, 554, 559; wife of, *see* Alice (of Champagne-Jerusalem)
- Rambald (Flotta), bishop of Vaison 1193-c. 1210: 286
- Rambald of Vacqueyras, Provençal troubadour (d. 1207?), 166
- Ramerupt, 780; lord of, 50, 52
- Ramla, 77, 83, 523, 532, 699; bishop of, 563
- Ranulf (of Blundeville), earl of Chester 1181-1232: 402, 414, 417
- Ranulf de Glanville, justiciar to Henry II 1180-1189 (d. 1190), 64
- Raphael (or Ranulf), Latin archbishop of Nicosia 1278-1286: 628
- Ra's al-Mā', 390
- Rascia, 127, 131, 139; rulers of, *see* Uroš II, Stephen Nemanya, *and also* Helena
- Rāshid-ad-Dīn Sinān, Assassin master in Syria c. 1169-1193: 80
- Rashid-ad-Dīn Ṭabīb, Persian historian and official (d. 1318), 721, 724
- Ravano dalle Carceri, lord of Negroponte 1209-1216: 208, 238, 239, 242, 245
- Ravandan, 636, *and see* Meillor III of Ravandel
- Ravenna, 450; archbishop of, 551
- Ravennika, 207, 239, 242 note
- Raymond, abbot of Moissac, 295 note
- Raymond (of Felgar), bishop of Toulouse 1232-1270: 277 note
- Raymond (of Mas d'André), bishop of Uzès 1212-c. 1227, papal legate in Languedoc, 297
- Raymond III, count of Tripoli 1152-1187: 46, 526, 533
- Raymond II, viscount of Turenne 1143-1190: 50
- Raymond Berengar, count (III) of Barcelona 1082-1131, count (I) of Provence 1112-1131: 21
- Raymond Berengar III, count of Provence 1209-1245: 318
- Raymond of Antioch, son of Bohemond III (d. 1197), 63, 526, 527, 533, 646, 648; wife of, *see* Alice (Roupenid)
- Raymond of Antioch, son of Bohemond IV (d. 1213), 698
- Raymond of Poitiers, prince of Antioch 1136-1149: 10, 12, 133, 134, 636, 637; wife of, *see* Constance of Antioch
- Raymond V of St. Gilles, count of Toulouse 1148-1194: 48, 54, 279, 282
- Raymond VI of St. Gilles, son of Raymond V; count of Toulouse 1194-1222, of Rodez 1209-1214: 155, 279, 282, 760; and Albigenian crusade: 284-288, 290-313, 315, 316, 320, 322, 327; wives of, *see* Joan (Plantagenet), Eleanor (of Aragon)
- Raymond VII of St. Gilles, son of Raymond VI; count of Toulouse 1222-1249: 290, 296, 298, 300 note, 303, 306, 307, 309-323, 440, 760; wife of, *see* Sancia (of Navarre)
- Raymond Roger, count of Foix 1188-1223: 293, 294, 297-304, 306, 307, 311-313, 315
- Raymond Roger, nephew of Raymond VI of Toulouse; viscount of Béziers and Carcassonne 1194-1209: 286-289, 292, 294
- Raymond Roupén, son of Raymond and Alice: 527, 533, 535, 537, 538, 649; prince of Antioch 1216-1219: 538, 540, 547, 649, 760; pretender in Cilicia (d. 1222), 540, 541, 651; daughter of, 355
- Raymond Trencavel II, son of Raymond Roger; viscount of Carcassonne 1209-1247 (d. c. 1263), 292, 319
- Razès, lord of, 288, 290
- Recordane, 390, 453
- Reddecoeur, Templar commander, 587
- Reformation, 373
- Regensburg, 49, 92, 114, 759; bishop of, 92, 93, 105, 120
- Reggio (di Calabria), 61; archbishop of, *see* Lando
- Reggio (nell' Emilia), bishop of, *see* Nicholas
- Reginald (of Urslingen), duke of Spoleto 1228-1228: 441, 446, 451, 452 note, 460 note
- Reginald de la Roche, son of James; baron of Damala 1302-1311: 271
- Reginald fitz Jocelyn, bishop of Bath 1174-1191: 58
- Reginald Grenier, lord of Sidon c. 1170-1187 (d. after 1200), 46, 524; wife of, *see* Helvis of Ibelin
- Reginald of Châtillon, regent of Antioch 1153-1160 (d. 1187), 140, 600, 640; wives of, *see* Constance of Antioch, Stephanie of Milly
- Reginald I of Dammartin, count of Boulogne 1191-1214: 155, 287
- Reginald of Dampierre (-le-Château), French baron (d. 1203), 159, 531
- Reginald of Haifa, son of Pagan; governor of Jerusalem, 545, 546
- Reginald of Montmirail, French baron, 159
- Reiner, Benedictine monk, 331
- Reinerius Sacconi, Dominican inquisitor, 281
- Remy, *see* Gerard
- Renart, lord of Nephin, 534; wife of, *see* Isabel of Gibelcar
- Renier, bishop of Bethlehem 1218?-1227?: 404
- Renier, Cistercian monk, papal legate in Languedoc, 283
- Renier Dandolo, son of Enrico; vice-doge of Venice 1202-1205 (d. 1208?), 168, 193
- Renier of Montferrat, son of William III;

- Byzantine caesar 1180-1182: 143, 164, 165, 185; wife of, *see* Maria Comnena
- Renier of Trit (Trith-St. Léger), knight from Hainault, "duke of Philippopolis" 1204-1205: 192, 202-204
- Renier Zeno, doge of Venice 1252-1268: 229
- Reviens, *see* Baldwin de Redvers
- Rheims, 373, 510; archbishops of, *see* Samson, William, Aubrey, Henry of Dreux; council of (1148), 328
- Rhine river, 329, 331, 333; count-palatine of the, 120; valley of, 327, 332, 337, 760
- Rhinelands, 89; crusaders from, 120
- Rhodes, 62, 226, 451, 601, 681, 726, 759, 762; ruler of, 217
- Rhodes mountains, 205, 225, 238
- Rhone river, 284, 303, 305, 312, 317; region of, 286; region east of, 279, 322, 490; region west of, 309, 311, 315, 318, 320; valley of, 57, 287, 335, 337
- Ribaldi* (Latin, rogues), 327, 336
- Ricaut Bonomel, Templar poet, 575 note
- Richard, son of Matthew of Salerno; count of Ajello (Aiello; d. c. 1195), 41 note
- Richard (or Richer), lord of L'Erminet, 527
- Richard I ("the Lionhearted"), son of Henry II and Eleanor; Plantagenet king of England 1189-1199: 48, 49, 117, 154, 155; and third crusade, xvii, 49, 53-85, 116, 488, 522-525, 759; and Sicily, 40 note, 41, 58-61, 759; and Cyprus, 61-64, 81, 148, 523, 525, 599-603, 608, 621, 622, 646, 759; nephews of, 159, 484; sisters of, 159, 322, 600; wife of, *see* Berengaria (of Navarre)
- Richard, viscount of Beaumont (-sur-Sarthe), 469, 475, 476
- Richard de Camville, English knight (d. 1191), 56, 64, 601
- Richard Filangieri, imperial marshal, 450-452, 543, 547, 612; bailie of Jerusalem 1231-1233: 548-550, 613; imperial bailie at Tyre 1233-1243: 469, 477, 481, 550, 551, 553, 554, 557, 559, 560, 613
- Richard of Argentan, English knight, 472, 473 note
- Richard of the Principate (of Salerno), regent of Edessa 1104-1108: 635
- Richard Orsini, son of Maio; count of Cephalonia 1238-1304, bailie of Achaea 1297-1300: 259, 265, 267
- Richard Plantagenet, son of John of England; earl of Cornwall, co-emperor (Holy Roman) 1257-1272: 360; crusade of, 463, 481-485, 489, 551, 552, 558, 614, 708, 761
- Richer, bishop of Melfi 1213-after 1231: 542, 612
- Richmond, earl of, 469
- Ricold of Monte Croce, Dominican missionary (d. 1320), 722
- Rieti, 440, 441, 450
- Riez, bishop of, 285, 297
- Rigord, French chronicler (d. c. 1209), 80
- Rita, daughter of Hetoum I; wife of Sempad or Constantine of Sarvantikar, 652 note
- Rita ("Stephanie", Roupenid), daughter of Leon II of Armenia; 2nd wife of John of Brienne 1214-1219: 537, 539, 540, 650, 651
- Rita ("Maria" or "Xenia", Hetoumid), daughter of Leon III of Armenia; wife of Michael IX Palaeologus (after 1206), 657
- Rita (Riṭa, Hetoumid), daughter of Sempad of Babarṭn; wife of Stephen (Roupenid); to 1162, d. after 1182), 644
- Robert (of Auvergne), archbishop of Lyons 1227-1234: 348
- Robert, archbishop of Nazareth (before 1217-after 1220), 389
- Robert (Poullain), archbishop of Rouen 1208-1221: 287
- Robert (of Ableiges), bishop of Bayeux 1206-1231: 386, 389
- Robert I, son of Louis VIII of France; count of Artois (d. 1250), 497-501
- Robert II, son of Robert I; count of Artois 1250-1302, regent of Naples 1285-1289: 261, 262
- Robert II, grandson of Louis VI of France; count of Dreux 1184-1218: 50, 51, 54, 71
- Robert III (fitz Parnel), earl of Leicester 1191-1204: 289 note
- Robert, patriarch of Jerusalem 1240-1254: 559, 561-563
- Robert, prior of Hereford, 79
- Robert Guiscard, son of Tancred of Hauteville; duke of Apulia 1059-1085: 5-7, 37, 119, 125-127, 162, 185
- Robert Malet, lord of Graville, 469
- Robert Mauvoisin, lord of Fanjeaux, 294 note, 295
- Robert of Clari (Cléry), French crusader and chronicler (d. after 1216), 160, 172
- Robert of Courçon (Curzon), cardinal-priest 1216-1219, papal legate in France, 300, 303, 304, 379, 380, 402, 406
- Robert of Courtenay, butler of France (d. c. 1240), 469
- Robert of Courtenay, son of Peter and Yolanda; Latin emperor of Romania 1221-1228: 213-216, 226, 242, 760; wife of, 215, 216
- Robert of Sablé, Angevin baron, master of the Temple 1191-1193: 56
- Robert of Torigny, French chronicler (d. 1186), 31
- Robert of Turnham, English commander, 64, 601
- Roda, 707, 738
- Rodez, 303; count of, 303
- Roger (of Wavrin), bishop of Cambrai 1179-1191: 93
- Roger I, son of Tancred of Hauteville; count of Sicily 1072-1101: 6, 7, 18, 19; wife of, *see* Adelaide of Montferrat

- Roger II, son of Roger I and Adelaide; count of Sicily 1101-1130: 5-8, 18-22, 132; king 1130-1154: 5, 8-16, 22-33, 40, 41, 132, 135, 136, 138, 141
- Roger, son of Roger II of Sicily; duke of Apulia 1127-1149: 11, 135
- Roger, son of Tancred of Lecce (d. 1193), 119, 166; wife of, *see* Irene Angelina
- Roger Bernard II, son of Raymond Roger; count of Foix 1223-1241: 311, 315, 318-320
- Roger Borsa, son of Robert Guiscard; duke of Apulia 1085-1111: 6, 7
- Roger de Flor, Templar, leader of Catalans (d. 1306), 597
- Roger de Lluria (of Loria), Italian admiral in Aragonese service (d. 1305), 264, 273
- Roger de Mowbray, lord of Thirsk, 46
- Roger of Hoveden (Howden), English chronicler (d. c. 1201), 55
- Roger of Les Moulins, master of the Hospital 1177-1187: 45
- Roger of Salerno, son of Richard of the Principate; regent of Antioch 1112-1119: 636
- Roger of San Severino, Angevin bailie at Acre 1277-1282: 585, 586, 588, 616, 617
- Roger of Wendover, English chronicler (d. 1236), 444
- Roland, bishop of Faenza 1210-1221: 421
- Rolandino of Canossa, brother of Albertino; co-lord of Thebes, 238, 241
- Romagna, 366
- Roman Catholic church, *see* Church, Latin
- Romania, Assises of, 274; Byzantine, 96, 513; "despot" of, 268; "despotate" of, 269, 273; Frankish, 193, 202, 206, 760, *and see* Latin empire of Constantinople; Turkish, *see* Rüm
- Romano (d'Ezzelino), *see* Ezzelino III
- Romanus (Bonaventura), cardinal-deacon 1216-1234, cardinal-bishop (of Porto) 1234-1243, papal legate in Languedoc 1225-1229: 315-317, 319, 323
- Romanus I Lecapenus, Byzantine co-emperor 919-944 (d. 948), 130, 216
- Romanus IV Diogenes, Byzantine emperor 1068-1071: 632
- Rome, 30, 212, 266, 434, 435, 450; as papal *see*, 11, 15, 27, 157, 163, 164 note, 171, 173, 175, 196, 219, 227, 241, 265, 283, 299, 306, 309, 334, 346, 351, 366, 380, 432, 437, 443, 451, 535, 542, 566, 580, 584, 722 note, *and see* Papacy; clergy of, 156, 354, 383; councils at, 353, *and see* Lateran councils; crusaders from, 383, 402, 409; people of, 350, 351, 353, 450; persons from, 566, 570, 585, 587; senators of, 364, 366
- Romuald Guarna, archbishop of Salerno 1153-1181, chronicler: 25, 33 note, 137
- Ronay, *see* John
- Roncelin, viscount of Marseilles 1192-1215: 338
- Rosetta, 30, 697, 747
- Rosières (-sur-Mance), *see* Walter
- Rota, 395
- Rotrou III, count of Perche 1144-1191: 49
- Roucy, *see* Alan
- Rouen, 341; archbishop of, *see* Walter of Coutances, Robert, Odo
- Rouergue, 303, 304, 315, 318, 320
- Ṛoupen I, Armenian lord of Gobidara (d. c. 1071), 633
- Ṛoupen II, son of Ṛoros II; Roupenid prince of Cilician Armenia 1168-1170: 642
- Ṛoupen III, son of Stephen and Rita; Roupenid prince of Cilician Armenia 1175-1187: 643, 644, 646; wife of, *see* Isabel (of Toron)
- Ṛoupen, son of Leon I of Armenia (d. 1140), 637, 638
- Ṛoupenids, Armenian dynasty in Cilicia 1080-1375: 132, 133, 633-635, 652, *and see* Ṛoupen I, Constantine, Ṛoros I 1100-1129, Leon I 1129-1137, Ṛoros II 1148-1168, Ṛoupen II 1168-1170, Mleh 1170-1175, Ṛoupen III 1175-1187, Leon II 1187-1219 (king 1198); *see also* Alice, Isabel, Philippa, Rita, Ṛoupen, Stephanie, Stephen
- Roussillon, 288; count of, 318 note
- Routiers* (French, mercenaries), 282, 286, 294, 295, 296 note, 307, 308, 318, 319, 327
- Roye, 492 note
- Ruad, 598
- Rubrouck, *see* William
- Rudolph (of Zähringen), bishop of Liège 1167-1191: 92, 93, 104
- Rudolph, bishop of Verden 1189-1205: 120
- Rudolph I (of Hapsburg), Holy Roman emperor (uncrowned) 1273-1291: 593, 751
- Rukn-ad-Dīn al-Hijāwī, Egyptian general, 476, 706
- Rukn-ad-Dīn Baybars, Egyptian general (d. 1245), 563, 709, 710
- Rukn-ad-Dīn Ghūrshānchī, son of Khorezm-Shāh Muḥammad (d. 1231), 672
- Rüm ("Rome"), *see* Anatolia; *see also* Selchūkīds of Rüm
- Rupert II, count of Nassau 1160-1192: 92, 94, 95, 109
- Russia, 205, 210, 233, 601, 687, 717, 719, 720, 722
- Russians, Slavic people, 122
- Rustam, Turkoman leader (d. 1187), 644, 680
- Saarbrücken, *see* Henry; count of, 397
- Sabina, cardinal-bishops of, *see* Conrad of Wittelsbach, Oliver (Saxo)
- Sablé (-sur-Sarthe), *see* Robert
- Sa'd-ad-Dīn, vizir of Arghun, 720
- Sa'dī, Persian poet (d. 1292), 663, 724

- Safad: under Moslems to 1240: 410, 415, 479, 539; under Franks 1240-1266: 481, 508, 576, 707, 748; under Moslems after 1266: 749
- Saif-ad-Dīn, *see* al-ʿĀdil I
- Saint Basil, pass, 101
- Saint Cyprien, town, 312, 313
- Saint Denis, town, 330, 336 note; abbey of, 57; abbot of, 375
- Saint George, castle, 264, 265, 272
- Saint Gilles, village, 277, 284, 286, 291; house of, 279, 299, 307, 310, 312, 316, 320, 322, *and see* Raymond V, Raymond VI, Raymond VII
- Saint Gotthard, pass, 334
- Saint Helena, castle, 267, 272
- Saint Hilarion, castle, 601; *see also* Dieu-damour
- Saint Livrade, village, 304
- Saint Omer (in France), town, castellans of, 244
- Saint Omer (in Greece), castle, *see* Bela, Nicholas II, Nicholas III
- Saint Peter, island, 336, 338
- Saint Pol (-sur-Ternoise), counts of, *see* Hugh, Walter of Châtillon
- Saint Quentin, town, *see* Simon
- Saint Ruf, canons regular of, 252
- Saint Sabas, monastery, 568, 569
- Saint Simeon, port, 10, 559, 575, 577
- Saint Thibéry, abbot of, 307
- Saint Thomas, islet, 593
- Saint-Sauveur, abbey, 252
- Saissac, 294 note
- Saladin (an-Nāṣir Ṣalāh-ad-Dīn Yūsuf ibn-Aiyūb), xx; Aiyūbid governor of Egypt 1169-1174: 34, 35, 140; sultan of Egypt and Syria 1174-1193: 117, 508, 523, 564, 600, 697, 699, 736, 737, 756; before Hattin (1187), 37, 146, 148, 643, 644; conquests (1187-1189), 38-40, 45, 46, 50, 82, 87-89, 91, 165, 325, 396, 423, 452, 526, 527, 529, 545, 572, 581, 598, 603, 645, 646, 759; and third crusade (1189-1192), 51-53, 67-69, 71-80, 82-85, 97, 101-103, 114, 148, 149, 417, 602, 680, 759; death of (1193), 85, 524, 528, 693, 759; heirs of, 117, 489, 567, 608, 683, 694-696, 704, 708, 713; niece of, 113
- Saladin tithe, 47, 55
- Ṣalāhī mamluks, 737
- Salamis, 191
- Salamīsh, al-ʿĀdil Badr-ad-Dīn, son of Baybars; Mamluk sultan of Egypt and Syria 1279-1279 (d. after 1287), 750-752
- Salamyah, 700
- Saleph river, *see* Calycadnus
- Salerno, 58, 435, *and see* Matthew, Richard of the Principate, Roger; archbishop of, 25, 137
- Salgurs, Turkoman tribe, 662, 663
- aṣ-Ṣāliḥ Aiyūb, Najm-ad-Dīn, son of al-Kāmil Muḥammad: 428; Aiyūbid ruler of Ḥiṣn Kaifā 1232-1239: 673, 684, 703-706; of Damascus 1238-1239, 1245-1249: 465, 471, 478, 674, 706; sultan of Egypt 1240-1249: 479-481, 483-485, 489, 493, 495-498, 593, 515, 551, 552, 561, 564, 565, 674, 707-712, 737-740, 761; ruler of Baalbek 1246-1249: 710; wife of, *see* Shajar-ad-Durr
- aṣ-Ṣāliḥ Ismāʿīl, ʿImād-ad-Dīn, son of al-ʿĀdil I Saif-ad-Dīn; Aiyūbid ruler of Damascus 1237-1237, 1239-1245, of Baalbek 1237-1246 (d. 1251), 473, 474, 478-483, 485, 552, 560, 561, 564, 704, 706, 707, 709, 710, 713
- Ṣāliḥī mamluks, 707, 737, 738, 740
- aṣ-Ṣāliḥiyah, town, 742
- Salisbury: bishop of, *see* Hubert Walter; "earl of", 482, 499
- Salm, count of (Upper), *see* Henry
- Salona, 13, 238; bishopric of, 252; lord of, 244, 271
- as-Salt, 710
- Saltukids, Turkoman dynasty at Erzerum 1080-1201: 681
- Salza, *see* Hermann
- Salzburg, 334
- Samarina, 479
- Samarus, archbishop of Trani 1194-1195: 119, 622
- Samos, 191
- Samosata, 636, 683, 696
- Samothrace, 191
- Samson (de Mauvoisin), archbishop of Rheims 1140-1161: 328
- Samsun, 681
- Samuel (Samouël) of Ani, Armenian chronicler (d. after 1179), 633
- San Germano (Vercellese), 440, 447, 454; agreement of (1225), 440-443, 446, 447; treaty of (1230), 465, 548, 612
- San Severino (Marche), *see* Roger
- Sancerre, 56; count of, 53, 469, 642
- Sancho, bishop of Couserans 1213-c. 1215: 296
- Sancho VI, king of Navarre 1150-1194: 61
- Sancho I, king of Portugal 1185-1211: 50, 115
- Sancia, sister of Peter II of Aragon; wife of Raymond VII of Toulouse 1211-1241 (d. 1261), 290, 300 note
- Sangerhausen, *see* Anno
- Sanjar, son of Malik-Shāh; Selchūkid ruler of Khurasan 1097-1156: 668, 669
- Santa Maria do Algarve, 395
- Sanudos, Venetian dynasty at Naxos 1207-1371 (1383): *see* Marco I 1207-c. 1227, Angelo c. 1227-1262, Marco II 1262-1303, William I 1303-1323, Nicholas I 1323-1341; *see also* Marino
- Sapientza, 239
- Saracens, *see* Moslems
- Sardinia, 350, 365, 369, 472, 512, 515
- Sarepta, 393, 524
- Sargines, *see* Geoffrey, Peter
- Sarmīn, 708, *and see* Acharie of Sermin

- Sarrasin, John, chamberlain to Louis IX, 493
- Sarus river, 635
- Sarvantikar, 576, 636, 644; lords of, 652 note
- Sasoun, 632, *and see* Heṭoum
- Savary of Mauléon, seneschal of Aquitaine (d. 1236), 294, 415
- Savona, 21, 22
- Savoy, *see* Philip; count of, 265
- Saxony, 89, 330; crusaders from, 51, 92, 115, 120
- Sayn, count of, *see* Henry
- Scandinavia, clergy of, 349; crusaders from, *see under* Denmark; mercenaries from, 179, 200
- Schaumburg, count of, 92
- Schlettstadt, 333
- Scotland, 352, 518
- Scribention, 102, *and see* Sopot
- Scutari, 177, 178
- Scyros, 191, 236
- Sebastia, 679, 680, 687, 690-692, 724, 730
- Second crusade (1147-1149), 5, 8 note, 9, 11-16, 23, 40, 90, 121, 134-136, 164, 677
- Séés: bishop of, 467, 468; count of, 50
- Segni, *see* Lucienne, Paul; *see also* Innocent III, Gregory IX, Alexander IV
- Segusio, *see* Henry
- Seine river, 329, 330, 332
- Selchükids, Oghuz Turkish people and dynasty in Persia and Mesopotamia 1038-1194: xxi, 662, 663, 665, 669-671, 686, 688, 736, *and see* Tughrul I 1038-1063, Malik-Shäh 1072-1092, Tughrul III 1177-1194, Sanjar; in Anatolia, *see* Selchükids of Rüm
- Selchükids of Rüm, Oghuz Turkish people and dynasty in Anatolia 1077-1302: 550, 673-692, 705, 706, 708, 748, 750; and Byzantines, 97, 110, 116, 125, 132, 140, 142, 640; and Nicaeans, 200, 201, 209, 210, 213, 223, 224, 230, 232; and Armenians, 536, 540, 541, 572, 631, 639, 645, 650, 652, 653, 697; and Franks, 110-113, 127; and Mongols, 223, 673, 683, 687-692, 717, 725-732; *and see* Sulaiman I 1077-1085, Kılıj Arslan I 1092-1107, Mas'ud I 1116-1155, Kılıj Arslan II 1155-1192, Kai-Khusrau I 1192-1196, 1204-1211, Sulaiman II 1196-1204, Kai-Kā'ūs I 1211-1220, Kai-Qobād I 1220-1237, Kai-Khusrau II 1237-1245, Kai-Kā'ūs II 1245-1249 (1261), Kılıj Arslan IV (1249) 1261-1265, Kai-Khusrau III 1265-1283; *see also* Arab, Jahān-Shāh, Jemri, Malik-Shäh (II), Mas'ud (III), Shāhan-Shāh (2), Tughrul Arslan, Tughrul-Shäh
- Seleucia, 635, 637, 645, 650, 651 note, 653
- Sempad, son of Constantine of Lampron; Heṭoumid constable of Armenia (d. 1276), 648 note, 651, 652, 654, 659
- Sempad, son of Leon III; Heṭoumid king of Cilician Armenia 1296-1298: 657
- Sempad (Smbat), brother of Öshin II; Heṭoumid lord of Babarön (d. 1152), 639
- Sempad, grandson of Sempad of Babarön; Heṭoumid lord of Sarvantikar, 652 note; wife of, *see* Rita?
- Sens, 333 note; archbishop of, *see* Peter, Walter
- Serai, 723
- Serbia, 91, 97, 99, 119, 127, 136, 147, 149, 367, 368; grand župans of, *see* Stephen Nemanya 1186-1196, Stephen I 1196-1217; kings of, *see* Stephen I 1217-1227, Stephen Uroš II Milutin 1281-1321
- Serbs, Slavic people, 15, 116, 131, 142, 148, 210, 228, 261; and third crusade, 98-100, 107, 109
- Sergiana, 254, 270
- Seriphos, 257
- Sermin, *see* Sarmin; *see also* Acharie
- Serres, 207, 214, 215, 217, 225, 228, 238, 242
- Sestus, 103, 108
- Setif, 28
- Sévérac (-le-Château), 303
- Sfax, 25, 27, 31
- Sgouromallis, archon of Laconia, 264
- Shabānkārah, Kurdish tribe, 663
- Shaddādids, Kurdish dynasty at Ani, 664
- Shāhan-Shäh, Bahā'-ad-Dīn, Selchükid pretender (d. 1104?), 677
- Shāhan-Shäh, son of Mas'ud; Selchükid emir at Ankara 1155-1164: 677, 678
- Shahنشah, son of Öshin II (d. after 1198), 645
- Shaiyād Ḥamzah, Turkish poet (c. 1350), 732
- Shaizar, 637, 640, 708
- Shajar-ad-Durr, wife of aṣ-Ṣāliḥ Aiyüb (to 1249), regent of Egypt 1249-1250, sultanah 1250-1250, wife of Aybeg 1250-1257: 498, 503, 711, 712, 738-742, 744, 761
- Shams-ad-Dīn, qadi at Jerusalem, 458
- Shams-ad-Dīn al-Iṣfahānī, vizir of Selchükids 1246-1249: 725
- Shams-ad-Dīn Marwān, Mamluk governor at Mecca (after 1269), 749
- Sharamsāh, 424
- Shihāb-ad-Dīn Tughrul, atabeg of Aleppo (in 1216), 698, 699
- Shī'ites, legitimist 'Alid Moslem sect, 17, 34, 35, 665, 671, 721, 746
- Shiloh, 390
- Shīrkūh, Asad-ad-Dīn al-Manṣūr, uncle of Saladin (d. 1169), 737
- Shirvān-Shāhs, *see* Minūchihir 1027-1034
- Shoṭa Rustveli, Georgian poet (d. after 1190), 665
- Shumlah, 662
- Sibṭ Ibn-al-Jauzī, Arabic chronicler (d. 1257), 705
- Sibyl, daughter of Amalric of Jerusalem; wife of William "Longsword" 1176-1177, wife of Guy of Lusignan 1180-1190;

- queen of Jerusalem 1186-1190: 65, 66, 81, 164
- Sibyl (Sibil), daughter of Heṭoum I of Armenia; wife of Bohemond VI of Antioch 1254-1275, regent of Tripoli 1275-1277 (d. after 1287), 567, 584, 591, 652 note
- Sibyl, 3rd wife of Bohemond III of Antioch c. 1180-c. 1194: 644
- Sibyl of Lusignan, daughter of Aimery and Isabel; 2nd wife of Leon II of Armenia (after 1210), 540
- Sicard, bishop of Cremona 1185-1215: 334
- Sicilian Vespers, 260, 367, 370, 588, 589, 762
- Sicily, 58-60, 65, 79, 120, 166, 270, 334 note, 346, 347, 382, 427, 435, 447, 448, 450, 452 note, 469, 472, 510, 513, 516, 517, 582, 588, 748 note, 762; counts of, *see* Roger I 1072-1101, Roger II 1101-1130; crusaders from, 446, 450, 452, 456; kingdom of, 3-42, 47, 88, 104, 117, 118, 130, 132, 135-139, 141, 149, 247, 439, 444, 455, 459-461, 508, 512, 514, 579, 762, *and see* Naples, Two Sicilies; kings of, *see* Roger II 1130-1154, William I 1154-1166, William II 1166-1189, Tancred 1190-1194, Henry VI 1194-1197, Frederick II 1212-1250, Conrad IV 1250-1254, Manfred 1258-1266, Charles of Anjou 1268-1282, Peter III 1282-1285, James II 1291-1327; princess of, *see* Constance; ships from, 52, 53, 516
- Sidon, district, under Moslems 1187-1192: 71; divided 1192-1240: 423, 455, 479, 524, 707; under Franks 1240-1291: 707; lords of, *see* Grenier
- Sidon, port: under Moslems 1187-1197: 530; divided 1197-1227: 121, 381, 392, 393, 423, 448, 530-532, 542; under Franks 1227-1260: 448, 507, 542, 548, 702, 711; Mongols at (1260): 573; under Templars 1260-1291: 574, 587, 588, 598; *see also* Qal'at al-Baḥr
- Siebenbürgen, *see* Transylvania; *see also* Alexander
- Siegfried (of Eppstein), archbishop of Mainz 1202-1230: 172 note, 431
- Siegfried (of Rechberg), bishop of Augsburg 1208-1227: 446
- Siegfried II, count of Liebenau (in 1189), 92, 93
- Siena, bankers from, 273, 366
- Signoria, *see* Venice, government of
- Silesia, 717
- Silpius, Mount, 577
- Silves, 50, 759
- Simanagla, 638
- Simon (of Maugastel), brother of Philip; archbishop of Tyre 1216-1227, Latin patriarch of Constantinople 1227-1232: 381, 385, 389
- Simon II, count of Saarbrücken 1211-1233: 397
- Simon, lord of Raban, daughter of, 638
- Simon Mansel, constable of Antioch, 577
- Simon II of Clermont (de l'Oise), great-nephew of count Ralph; lord of Ailly and Nesle 1214-1280: 469
- Simon of Montfort, grandson of Robert II of Leicester; baron (IV) of Montfort 1181-1218: 159, 174, 175; earl of Leicester 1206-1218: 287, 289-309, 326, 327 note, 333, 344, 760; duke of Narbonne 1216-1218: 308-315, 318, 320-322, 470; brother of, 472; son of, 470; wife of, *see* Alice of Montmorency
- Simon of Montfort, son of Simon IV; earl of Leicester 1239-1265: 482, 483, 552
- Simon of St. Quentin, Dominican missionary and traveler (d. after 1247), 684, 687
- Sinjar, 696, 706; lords of, 694, 699; qadi of, 706
- Sinope, 200, 682, 687, 726, 727
- Siphnos, 239, 257
- Siponto, 359
- Sirmium, 139, 146
- Sis, 527, 541, 635, 643, 644, 646, 650, 656; archbishop of, 647; mint of, 652 note; province east of, 637 note; sacked by Mamluks (1266), 576, 654, 749; (1275), 749
- Siyāwush, son of Kai-Khusrau II, *see* Jemri
- Skorta, 266, 272
- Skripou, 271
- Slav, Alexius, cousin of Boril; Vlach chieftain at Melnik (in 1208), 205, 206, 210, 216; wives of, 206, 210
- Slavs, Indo-European people, in Germany, 121; in Greece, 244, 264; in the Balkans, 124, 144, 146
- Smyrna, 230
- Soffredo (of Pisa), cardinal-deacon 1182-1184, cardinal-priest 1184-1208 (d. 1210), papal legate on fourth crusade, 154, 533, 534
- Sofia, 99-101
- Soissons, 159, 164, 166; counts of, 313, 474
- Soli, 625
- Somerset, 54
- Sonnac, *see* William
- Sopot, 102
- Sozopolis, 681
- Spain, 16, 21, 28, 34 note, 298, 327, 378, 384, 386, 396, 439, 490, 542, 703; clergy of, 365; crusaders from, 416
- Spalato, 387, 388; archdeacon of, 388, 393
- Sparta, 240, 253, 254; *see also* Lacedaemon
- Spercheus river, 242
- Speyer, 333; bishop of, *see* Otto
- Splügen, pass, 334
- Spoletto: duchy of, 355; duke of, 441, 446, 451
- Sponheim, count of, *see* Henry
- Sporades, 238
- Starkenbug, 448, 460, 543, 576, 581; *see also* Montfort
- Stavrovouni, mountain, 600

- Stenimaka, 203, 204
 Stephanie (Sdefania; Heṭoumid), daughter of Constantine of Lampron; 2nd wife of Henry I of Cyprus 1237-1249: 565, 652 note
 Stephanie of Milly, wife of Humphrey III of Toron (to 1173), 2nd wife of Reginald of Châtillon 1176-1187, wife of Hugh III Embriaco (to 1196, d. after 1197), 529
 Stephen, abbot of Eaunes (d. 1209), 296 note
 Stephen IV, Armenian catholicus 1290-1292: 656
 Stephen, grandson of Hugh I of Champagne; count of Chartres and Blois 1089-1102: 159
 Stephen I, brother of Henry I of Champagne; count of Sancerre 1152-1191: 53, 642
 Stephen I, son of Stephen Nemanya; grand župan of Serbia 1196-1217, king 1217-1227: 148, 149, 182 note, 205, 210; wife of, *see* Eudocia Angelina
 Stephen III, grandson of Bela II; king of Hungary 1162-1173: 139
 Stephen (Sdefanē), son of Leon I of Armenia; Roupenid prince (d. 1162), 638, 639, 641, 643; wife of, *see* Rita (Heṭoumid)
 Stephen Langton, cardinal-priest 1205-1228, archbishop of Canterbury 1207-1228: 346 note
 Stephen Nemanya, son of Uroš II; župan of Rascia 1166?-1186, grand župan of Serbia 1186-1196 (d. 1200), 91, 99, 102, 107, 139, 146-148
 Stephen of Cloyes, shepherd and visionary, 330-332, 336 note, 337, 340, 760
 Stephen of Perche, son of Rotrou III; French knight, "duke of Philadelphia" (in 1204), 159, 192
 Stephen of Turnham, English commander, 62
 Stephen Uroš II Milutin, grandson of Stephen I; Nemanjic king of Serbia 1281-1321: 260
 Stirione, Calabrese pirate, 205
 Straits, *see* Bosphorus, Dardanelles; map of, 152
 Strassburg: bishop of, 90; diet at (1287), 90
Strategos (Greek, tax-collector), 19
Stratiotes (Greek, soldier), 129
 Strez, Dobromir, brother of Boril; Vlach chieftain at Prosek (d. c. 1213), 205, 208-210, 216
 Strymon river, 36, 37
 Stymphalus, Lake, 252
 Sudan, 735
 Suez, isthmus, 564
 Suez, port, 708
 Suger, abbot of St. Denis (d. 1151), 15 note
 Suger (Viegas), bishop of Lisbon c. 1210-before 1231: 395
 Suhrawardī, Shihāb-ad-Dīn 'Umar, Persian mystic (d. 1234), 667
 Sulaimān I ("the Magnificent"), Ottoman sultan 1520-1566: 693 note
 Sulaimān I, Selchūkid sultan of Rūm 1077-1085: 125, 126, 676
 Sulaimān II, Rukn-ad-Dīn, son of Kīlij Arslan II; Selchūkid sultan of Rūm 1196-1204: 649, 681
 Sully, *see* Hugh
 Suṭṭān Veled, son of Jalāl-ad-Dīn Rūmī; poet and dervish master (d. 1312), 732
 Sultaniyeh, archbishop of, 722; *see also* Kangurlan
 Sulzbach, *see* Bertha
 Sungur, Shams-ad-Dīn al-Ashkar, Egyptian emir (d. after 1287), 654, 751, 752
 Sunnites, orthodox Moslem sect, 17, 18, 34, 665, 688, 721
 Susa, 23, 25
 Sussex, earl of, 417
 Sutri, bishop of, 118
 Swabia: crusaders from, 92, 93, 109, 450, 454; dukes of, *see* Frederick, Philip
 Sweden: clergy of, 349; king of, *see* Eric Lāspe 1223-1250
 Symeon II, Orthodox patriarch of Antioch c. 1207-c. 1240: 535-537, 566
 Symeon, tsar of Bulgaria 893-927: 216
 Syracuse, 21, 396
 Syria: church of, *see* Monophysites; Greeks in, 133, 140, 141, 174, 677, 678; Mongols in, 571-575, 582, 586, 653-655, 657, 714, 717-719, 721, 726, 744, 751; Turks in, 39, 67, 87, 489, 561, 578 note, 662, 674, 678, 680, 683, 725, 727; map of northern, 521
 Syrian Gates, pass, 527, 639, 654
 Syros, 239
 Syvota, port, 258, 260
 Tabor, Mount, 379, 391, 392, 395, 410, 537, 539, 564, 574, 697, 698
 Tabriz, 653, 703, 718, 719, 724
 Tafurs, 326
 Tagliacozzo, battle (1268), 256, 366, 513, 762
 Tagus river, 56
 Ṭālib, Ḥiṣn-ad-Dīn, Arab rebel in Egypt (in 1253), 743
 Tall al-'Ajūl, 701
 Tall Ḥamdūn, 541, 637-639, 644, 656, 657
 Tamar, queen of Georgia 1184-1212: 200, 664, 665
 Tamerlane, *see* Timur
 Tamīm, son of al-Mu'izz; Zīrid emir at Mahdia 1062-1108: 18, 19
 Tancred, illegitimate son of Roger, duke of Apulia; count of Lecce, king of Sicily 1190-1194: 37, 39-41, 58-60, 119, 166, 759; daughter of, 59
 Tancred, nephew of Bohemond I; regent of Antioch 1101-1103, 1104-1112: 5, 127
 Tancred of Hauteville, Norman knight. 26
 Ṭannāh, 498, 499, 502

- Taranto, 138, 346, 435; principality of, 359, 361, *and see* Charles, Philip
- Tarbes, 295
- Tarentaise, 364; archbishop of, *see* Haimo
- Tarn river, 288, 315, 320; region of, 295
- Tarsus: before 1189: 632-637, 642, 644; after 1189: 115, 529, 540, 541, 627, 645, 648, 651 note, 654; archbishops of, Armenian: *see* Nersēs of Lampron; Orthodox: 529, 648; governor of, 641
- Tatars, *see* Mongols
- Taṭoul, Armenian governor at Marash (to 1104), 632, 635
- Taurus mountains, 114, 133, 600, 631-634, 682, 704, 726, 728
- Taygetus range, 240, 244, 248, 264
- Tegüder ("Aḥmad"), son of Hulagu; Il-khan of Persia 1282-1284: 720, 751
- Tell Bashir, 698, 711
- Tempe, Vale of, 236
- Temple (Latin, *Templum Domini*), at Jerusalem, 504, 545, 561; *see also* Aqṣā mosque; knights of, *see* Knights Templar; masters of, *see* Gerard of Ridefort 1185-1189, Robert of Sablé 1191-1193, Gilbert Horal 1193-c. 1198, Theodat of Bersiac 1202-1204, William of Chartres 1210-1219, Peter of Montaigu 1219-1229, Armand of Périgord 1232-1244, William of Sonnac 1247-1250, William of Beaujeu 1273-1291; other masters were Walter (count) of Spelten 1189-1191, Terricus c. 1198-1201, Philip of Le Plessis 1204-1210?, Reginald of Vichiers 1250-1255, Thomas Berard 1256-1273
- Tenos, 191, 236, 238; lord of, *see* George Ghisi
- Termes, 288, 290, 294 note
- Terra di Lavoro, 359
- Teutonic Knights, military order, 122; in Syria, 116, 443, 448, 452, 459, 460, 476, 536, 538, 541, 544, 545, 547, 560, 562, 563, 568, 569, 582, 585, 590, 591, 594-596; in Egypt, 413, 415; in Cilicia, 650; in Frankish Greece, 237, 251; fortresses, 542, 576, 581; masters of, *see* Hermann of Salza c. 1210-1239, Conrad of Thuringia 1239-1240, Gerard of Malberg 1241-1244, Anno of Sangerhausen 1257-1274, Burkhard of Schwanden 1283-1290, Conrad of Feuchtwangen 1290-1296; other masters were Henry of Hohenlohe, Günther, Poppo of Osterna, Hartmann of Heldrungen, Godfrey of Hohenlohe, Siegfried of Feuchtwangen
- Thamar ("Catherine"), daughter of Nicephorus of Epirus and Anna; 1st wife of Philip I of Taranto 1294-(div.) 1309: 263, 267, 270, 273
- Thebes: under Greeks to 1204: 13, 14 note; under Franks after 1204: 192, 202, 208, 210, 237, 238, 241-247, 261, 272, 273; archbishopric of, 252
- Thedisius, secretary to Milo, 291, 297
- Thelematarioi* (Greek, volunteers), 231
- Theobald I, brother of Henry I; count of Bar 1191-1214, of Luxemburg 1196-1214: 293
- Theobald V, brother of Henry I of Champagne; count of Blois 1152-1191: 53, 159
- Theobald III, son of Henry I; count of Champagne 1197-1201: 158-160, 164, 470
- Theobald IV, son of Theobald III; count of Champagne 1201-1253: 319; king of Navarre 1234-1253: 466; crusade of, 243, 463, 469-481, 483-485, 489, 551-553, 614, 706, 707, 761
- Theobald V, son of Theobald IV; count of Champagne and king of Navarre 1253-1270: 510, 517
- Theobald I, duke of Lorraine 1213-1220: 385, 431
- Theobald of Cépoys (Chepoix), Picard knight (d. c. 1311), 270
- Theobald Visconti, archdeacon of Liège, 583, *and see* Gregory X
- Theodat of Bersiac, master of the Temple 1202-1204: 533
- Theodora Angelina, sister of Isaac II; 2nd wife of Conrad of Montferrat 1185-1187 (d. before 1190), 164
- Theodore, Orthodox bishop of Negroponte (c. 1205), 251
- Theodore Angelus Comnenus, brother of Michael I, 240; despot of Epirus 1214-1230: 210, 212-214, 242; "emperor" at Thessalonica 1224-1230: 214-217, 242, 243, 760, 761; after 1230 (d. 1254), 217, 222, 226, 227
- Theodore Branas, Byzantine ruler of Adrianople (after 1206), 203, 204, 210; wife of, *see* Agnes of France
- Theodore Ducas, Byzantine leader, 201
- Theodore I Lascaris, Byzantine emperor at Nicaea 1208-1222: 150, 151, 197, 201, 202, 204-206, 209-211, 213, 214, 393, 535, 650, 760; niece of, 210; wives of, *see* Anna Angelina, Philippa (Roupenid), Mary of Courtenay
- Theodore II "Lascaris", son of John III Ducas Vatatzes; Byzantine emperor at Nicaea 1254-1258: 219, 220, 228, 246, 761; wife of, *see* Helena (of Bulgaria)
- Theodore Mancaphas, Byzantine rebel at Philadelphia (d. c. 1189), 98
- Theodoric, archbishop of Ravenna 1228-1249, papal legate to Syria, 551
- Thera, 238
- Thermopylae, 237, 238; bishopric of, 252
- Thessalonica, city: under Greeks to 1204: 4, 36, 37, 106, 118, 142, 146, 148, 165, 170, 190; under Franks 1204-1224: 165, 196, 202, 206, 207, 210, 211, 213, 214, 238, 242; under Greeks after 1224: 214, 215, 217, 222, 225, 226, 228, 266, 270, 271, 760; archbishop of, *see* Garin; metro-

- politian of, 214; patron saint of, 205; treaty of (1148), 136
- Thessalonica, kingdom, 190-192, 203, 205-208, 212, 236, 238-243, 252, 760; despots of, *see* Angelus "Comnenus"; kings of, *see* Boniface (II) 1204-1207, Demetrius 1209-1224
- Thessaly: 1204-1261: 192, 202, 207, 212, 213, 215, 217, 236, 238, 242, 247, 252; after 1261: 257, 258, 261, 265-267, 270, 271, 273, 367
- Thessy, *see* Bertrand
- Thierry d'Orcques, lord of Arsuf *c.* 1192-c. 1205: 524
- Third crusade (1189-1192), 5, 40, 41, 47, 147, 155, 159, 160 note, 560, 562, 602, 646, 759; Anglo-French phase, preparations: 47-57; in Sicily: 41, 58-61; in Cyprus: 62-64, 601, 646; in Syria: 53, 64-85, 148, 339, 522-524, 697; German phase, preparations: 88-92; in Europe, 49, 92-109, 146-148; in Anatolia: 49, 110-114, 645, 680, 682; in Syria: 49, 50, 114-116; map, 86
- Thirsk, lord of, 46
- Thomas, archdeacon (1230-1243) and archbishop (1243-1244) of Spalato (d. 1268), 388, 393
- Thomas, bishop of Erlau 1217-1224: 389
- Thomas (of Ham), constable of Tripoli (d. after 1255), 563
- Thomas, governor of Mamistra, 638
- Thomas, lord of Marly, 468
- Thomas (Toumas), grandson of Leon I; regent of Cilician Armenia 1168-1170: 642
- Thomas Agni of Lentini, bishop of Bethlehem 1255-1267, archbishop of Cosenza 1267-1272, patriarch of Jerusalem 1272-1277: 570, 585
- Thomas Angelus Comnenus, son of Nicephorus and Anna; despot of Epirus 1296-1318: 267
- Thomas Aquinas, Italian theologian (d. 1274), 606
- Thomas Morosini, Latin patriarch of Constantinople 1205-1211: 195-199, 204
- Thomas of Aquino, count of Acerra, bailie of Jerusalem 1226-1228: 444, 449, 452-454, 459, 542; imperial agent in 1243: 559, 565
- Thomas I of Autremencourt ("de Stromoncourt"), lord of Salona 1205-1212: 238
- Thomas II of Autremencourt ("de Stromoncourt"), son of Thomas I; lord of Salona 1212-after 1258: 244
- Thomas III of Autremencourt ("de Stromoncourt"), grandson of Thomas II; lord of Salona 1294-1311: 271
- Thomas of Marzano, marshal of Naples, bailie of Achaea 1309-1313: 270
- Thrace: before 1204: 97, 99, 104, 108, 179; 1204-1261: 190-192, 202, 203, 215, 217, 219, 220, 236, 246; after 1261: 270
- Thuringia: crusaders from, 444; landgraves of, *see* Louis III, Hermann I, Louis IV, Henry Raspe IV, *and also* Conrad
- Thury (-en-Valois), *see* Lambert
- Tiber river, 58
- Tiberias, 45, 423, 479, 561, 564, 702, 707, 710; lord of, 529, 534
- Tiberias, Lake, 390, 391
- Tickhill, honor of, 54
- Tiflis, 664
- Tigris river, xxi, 684
- Timur ("Lenk", the Lame; Tamerlane), Timurid Gur-Khan 1369-1404: 724, 729
- Timurids, Turkish dynasty in Transoxiana and Persia 1369-1500: 724, *and see* Timur (Tamerlane) 1369-1404
- at-Tinah, 593
- Tinnis, 30, 36, 419
- Tirnov0, 205, 213, 215, 760; archbishops of, 147, 219
- Töküş (Takash), Khorezm-Shāh 1172-1200, sultan 1194-1200: 670, 759; wife of, *see* Turkan Khātūn
- Tonkin, 715, 717
- Tonnerre, count of, 259
- Toqūz Khātūn (Persian; Mongol, Toghus Qatun: peacock queen), wife of Hulagu (d. 1265), 572, 720
- Torigny (-sur-Vire), *see* Robert
- Tornavan, prince of, 633
- Toron: under Moslems to 1229: 120, 121, 410, 415, 530, 539, 695; under Franks 1229-1266: 455, 553, 554; under Moslems after 1266: 576, 580; lords of, 559, 560, *and see* Humphrey III, Humphrey IV, Isabel
- Toros, son-in-law of Gabriel of Melitene; Armenian lord of Edessa (d. 1098), 632, 634, 635
- Toros I, son of Constantine; Roupenid prince of Cilician Armenia 1100-1129: 635, 636
- Toros II, son of Leon I; Roupenid prince of Cilician Armenia 1148-1168: 140, 637-642; wife of, 638
- Toros III, son of Leon III; Hetoumid king of Cilician Armenia 1292-1294 (d. 1296), 656, 657, 755
- Toros, son of Hetoum I (d. 1266), 576, 654
- Tortosa (in Spain), 396
- Tortosa (in Syria), 39, 456, 547, 577, 581, 589, 598, 608; bishop of, 584, 587, 591
- Toucy, *see* Narjot (2), Philip
- Toul: bishops of, *see* Peter, Otto; diocese of, 510
- Toulousain, 287, 294, 306, 309, 311, 315
- Toulouse, city, 291 note, 292, 293, 295-300, 303-305, 308-315, 318-321, 323, 760; bishops of, 277 note, 296, 299, 306, 312; council of (1229), 323, 324; diocese of, 320
- Toulouse, county, 48, 321, 470, *and see* Toulousain; countess of, *see* Joan; counts of, 279, 321, 470, 472, *and see* Raymond V, VI, *and* VII of St. Gilles

- Touraine, lord of, 48
Tours, 56, 341; archbishop of, 56; livres of, 225, 349, 491-494, 504, 508, 510, 511, 517
Tower of David, fortification at Jerusalem, 472, 473, 477, 478, 545, 546, 558, 561, 562, 706
Trani, 256; archbishop of, *see* Samarus; merchants from, 622
Transcaucasia, 703
Transjordan or Transjordan, 417, 552, 693, 702, 714, 750; rulers of, *see* Aiyūbids (1188-1263); *see also* Kerak
Transoxiana, 668, 669, 671, 689, 717
Transylvania, *see* Alexander of Siebenbürgen; Germans from, 388
Trapani, 368, 370, 517
Trazarg, monastery, 644
Treaties, *see* Devol (1108), Mignano (peace of, 1139), Thessalonica (1148), Venice (1177), Constance (1183), Nuremberg (1188), Messina (1190), Jaffa (1229), Paris (peace of, 1229), San Germano (1230), Paris (peace of, 1259), Viterbo (1267), Orvieto (1281), Caltabellotta (peace of, 1302)
Trebizond, city, 200, 677, 681, 723, 730, 760
Trebizond, empire, 200, 205, 681-684, 726; emperor of, *see* Alexius Comnenus 1204-1222
Trencavel, family, 287, 288, 290, 298, 315, 760, *and see* Raymond
Treviso, 334
Trier, 331, 335
Triphylia, 248, 272
Tripoli (in Africa), 22, 23, 25-28, 30, 31
Tripoli (in Syria), city: under Franks 1109-1189: 38, 39, 46, 47, 50, 52, 645; under Franks 1189-1289: 64, 115, 393, 478, 527, 530, 534, 538, 569, 570, 577, 581, 584, 587, 591-593, 605, 609, 617, 655, 697, 752, 762; under Moslems after 1289: 754; bishops of, 585, 587, 594; burgesses of, 602; mayor of, 591
Tripoli, county, before 1189: 45; 1189-1243: 121, 456, 524, 526, 529, 532-534, 540, 544, 545, 547, 549, 550, 603; 1243-1289: 558, 566, 570, 576, 581, 584, 587, 590, 593, 752; bailie of, *see* Bartholomew; countess of, *see* Lucy 1288-1289; counts of, *see* Raymond III 1152-1187, Bohemond IV 1187-1233, Bohemond V 1233-1252, Bohemond VI 1252-1275, Bohemond VII 1275-1287; regents of, *see* Lucienne 1252-1252, Sibyl 1275-1277
Tripotamos, 269
Trith (-St. Léger), *see* Renier of Trit
Troad, 200, 202
Troina, 6
Trois-Fontaines, *see* Aubrey
Troyes, 333 note; count-palatine of, 53, 81, 523
True Cross, 46, 69, 71, 72, 77, 330, 390, 392, 407, 415, 417, 424, 428
Tsakhoud, 637 note
Tubania, 390
Tudela, *see* Benjamin, William
Tughrul I (Tughrul-Beg), Selchūkid ruler 1038-1063: 670
Tughrul III, Selchūkid sultan 1177-1194: 665, 670, 759
Tughrul Arslan, son of Kīlij Arslan I; Selchūkid emir at Melitene 1107-1124: 677
Tughrul-Shāh, Mughīth-ad-Dīn, son of Kīlij Arslan II; Selchūkid emir at Erzerum *c.* 1201-1225: 682
Tughtigin, atabeg of Damascus 1104-1128: 662
Tunis, 25, 30, 42, 368, 512, 515-517, 581, 582, 615
Tunisia, 4, 17, 18, 22-24, 26-28, 30-32, 511-517, 749, 762; Christians of, *see* Afāriqah; "king" of, 33, *and see* Hafšids
Tunisian crusade (1270), 256, 368, 509-517, 581, 615, 749, 762
Tūrān-Shāh, al-Mu'azzam Fakhr-ad-Dīn, son of Saladin; Aiyūbid prince (d. 1260), 708, 713, 714
Tūrān-Shāh, al-Mu'azzam, son of aṣ-Ṣāliḥ Aiyūb: 489, 496, 498, 708, 738; Aiyūbid sultan of Egypt and ruler of Damascus and Baalbek 1249-1250: 502, 503, 505, 615, 711, 712, 739-741, 761
Turcoples, eastern light cavalry, 35, 388, 424, 603, 620
Turenne, viscount of, *see* Raymond
Turkān Khātūn, wife of Töküş (d. *c.* 1232), 671
Turkestan, 690, 719; *see also* Central Asia
Turkey, xxi, 675, 676, 684, 685
Turkish language, transliteration and nomenclature, xxi
Turkomans, Turkic people, 712, 718, 720, 740; in Central Asia, 669; in Persia, 662, 720; in Mesopotamia, 665, 680; in Syria, 705, 710, 756; in Cilicia, 643, 653, 655; in Anatolia, 643, 644, 662, 674, 676, 678, 680, 681, 684-691, 725-732; in Georgia, 664
Turks, Altaic people, xviii, 10, 127, 390, 661-692, 716, 724, 732; and third crusade, 51, 52, 73-79, 102, 110-113; mercenaries, 102, 247, 253, 254; mamluks, 706, 712, 736, 738, 740, 757; in Cilicia, 632, 634, 636, 638, 641, 658; *and see* Ottomans, Selchūkids, Turkomans
Turnham, *see* Robert, Stephen
Turun-Tai, Egyptian emir (d. 1290), 753, 754; son of, 754
Tuscany, 355, 362, 364, 435, 627, 628; bankers in, 365, 371; communes of, 549; count of, 108; crusaders from, 350, 366, 594
Tusculum, cardinal-bishops of, *see* Nicholas, James of Vitry, Odo of Châteauroux

- Two Sicilies, kingdom, 8, 33; *see also* Sicily, Naples
- Tyre: under Franks 1124-1189: 38, 39, 46, 47, 51, 52, 55, 96, 165, 645, 759; 1189-1225: 65-68, 71, 78, 80-82, 85, 115, 120, 121, 158 note, 161, 381, 523-525, 530, 536, 759; 1225-1243: 442, 477, 489, 542, 548-551, 553, 554, 557, 613, 761; 1243-1291: 554, 559, 560, 568-571, 577, 580, 581, 585, 588-590, 598, 607 note, 617, 762; archbishops of, *see* William, Joscius, Simon, Giles, Peter of Sargines, Bonnacorso; lady of, *see* Margaret 1284-1291; lords of, *see* Philip of Montfort 1243-1270, John 1270-1283, Humphrey 1283-1284
- Tzacones, Greek people, 253
- Tzurulum, 220, 222, 226
- Ubaldo (Lanfranchi), archbishop of Pisa 1176-1208, papal legate on third crusade, 66, 69
- Ugolino (de' Conti de Segni), cardinal-deacon 1198-1206, cardinal-bishop of Ostia 1206-1227: 435, *and see* Gregory IX
- Uj (Turkish, marchland), 676, 680, 681, 687, 729
- Ukraine, 717
- Ulrich (of Andechs-Diessen), bishop of Passau 1215-1221: 423
- Ulrich, cousin of Adalbert of Dillingen; count of Kyburg 1180-1231: 92, 93
- Ulrich II, duke of Carinthia 1181-1202: 120
- al-'Umari, Egyptian official and traveler (d. 1348), 732
- 'Uqailids, Arab dynasty at Mosul 990-1096: 663
- Urban II (Odo of Lagery), pope 1088-1099: 6, 126, 154, 344
- Urban III (Hubert Crivelli), pope 1185-1187: 759
- Urban IV (James Pantaléon, patriarch of Jerusalem 1255-1261), pope 1261-1264: 253-255, 358, 363-365, 371, 569, 570, 761
- Uroš II, Primislav, župan of Rascia 1140-1151, 1152-1156: 131
- Ursinus (possibly Ōshin I), Armenian lord of Adana, 633
- Usāmah, 'Izz-ad-Dīn, emir of Beirut (to 1197), 530, 531, 695
- Utrecht: bishop of, 389; diocese of, 381
- Uzbek, Muzaffar-ad-Dīn, brother of Abū-Bakr; atabeg of Azerbaijan 1210-1225: 672
- Uzès, bishop of, 297
- Vacqueyras, *see* Rambald
- Vahka, 633, 634, 637, 638, 641
- Vahram, castellan of Corycus, 540, 651 note; wife of, *see* Alice (Roupenid)
- Vaison (-la-Romaine), bishop of, *see* Rambald
- Valania, 558, 589, 703
- Valence, 287, 305, *and see* Bernard
- Valenciennes, 268
- Valois, count of, 270, 371, 372
- Van, Lake, 663, 672, 683
- Varangian guard, 179
- Vardar river, 191, 192, 205, 206, 213
- Varennes (-sur-Allier), *see* Florent
- Váres, Cape, 395
- Vasil, Armenian lord of Partzapert, 639
- Vasil, son of constable Sempad; Hetoumid commander (in 1266), 654
- Vaspurkan, 633; king of, 630
- Vatatzes, *see* John III Ducas
- Vatonda, 257
- Velestinon, 238
- Veligosti: barons of, *see* William de la Roche, James de la Roche, Reginald de la Roche; barony of, 250
- Venaissin, 309
- Vendôme, 330, 336; count of, 493
- Venice, 38, 132, 150, 155, 159-170, 173, 175, 194, 206, 208, 221, 225, 229, 231, 235, 238, 334, 387; crusaders from, 88, 150, 168, 173-176, 179-184, 187, 232, 363, 412, 427, 596, 760; doges of, *see* Peter of Pola 1130-1148, Vitale Michiele II 1156-1173, Enrico Dandolo c. 1193-1205, Peter Ziani 1205-1229, Jacob Tiepolo 1229-1249, Renier Zeno 1252-1268; government (signoria) of, 8, 10, 14, 22, 104, 131, 136-139, 146, 157 note, 163, 164, 166, 168, 172, 173, 182-184, 190, 191, 193, 204, 208, 212, 217, 230, 239, 240, 245, 246, 249, 253-255, 260, 369, 511, 512, 549, 568, 570, 591, 621 note, 760; in Latin empire, 189-191, 193-199, 203, 204, 213, 214, 220, 222, 227, 229-232; merchants from, 225, 582; in Byzantine empire: 132, 138, 139, 144, 162, 185, 622; in Cilicia: 650, 655; in Cyprus: 622; in Frankish Greece: 243, 251; in Syria: 381, 548, 553, 559, 560, 568-570, 572, 579, 582, 585, 588, 590, 592, 593, 615, 698; ships from, 9, 53, 96, 109, 125, 142, 161-163, 178, 179, 181, 184, 208, 218, 219, 221, 222, 231, 238, 243, 254, 257, 260, 368, 387, 569, 592, 597, 760; trade with, 14, 697; treaty of (1177), 33, 137; vassals of, 239, 243
- Verden, bishop of, *see* Rudolph
- Verdun, diocese of, 510
- Verissa, 215, *and see* Pinarhisar
- Veroli, 438, 447
- Verona, 168, 438, 450; *and see* Boniface, Felicia, Gilbert, Grapella, William (2); council of (1184), 282; crusaders from, 208, 238
- Vervaena, 264
- Vexin, 48
- Vézelay, 12, 49, 56-58, 60, 759
- Via Egnatia, road, 3

- Vicenza, 256
 Victor IV (Octavian, count of Tusculum), anti-pope 1159-1164: 137, 346
 Vienna, 93
 Vienne, 305, 335, 364
 Vieste, 29
 Villani, John, Italian chronicler (d. 1348), 273
 Villehardouin, *see* Geoffrey (3), Isabel, William
 Villiers (-le-Bel), *see* John
 Vitale Michiele II, doge of Venice 1156-1173: 139
 Viterbo, 11, 255, 450; treaty of (1267), 255, 256, 258-263, 367
 Vitre, lord of, 469
 Vitry (-en-Artois), *see* James
 Vizya, 215, 226
 Vlachia, 106, 147, 219; *see also* Wallachia
 Vlachs, Italic people, 147, 204, 206, 219; and third crusade, 97, 98, 100, 102, 105, 107, 109; king of, 213, 218
 Voden, 102
 Vogt (German, advocate), 93
 Vohburg, margrave of, 92, 93
 Vöhringen, count of, *see* Henry
 Voleron, 228
 Volga river, 717, 723; valley of, 748
 Volos, Gulf of, 192, 257
 Vostitsa: baron of, 259, 261, 264; barony of, 250
 Vukan, son of Stephen Nemanya; pretender in Montenegro 1204-1205: 149
- Waldensian heresy, heretics, 279, 327 note
 Wallachia, *see* Vlachia
 Walram IV, son of Henry III; duke of Limburg 1221-1226: 444
 Walram I of Nassau, cousin of Rupert; count 1167-1198: 92
 Walter (Cornuti), archbishop of Sens 1222-1241: 467
 Walter (Gray), archbishop of York 1216-1255: 483
 Walter, stepson of Aymar of Lairon; constable of Cyprus, lord of Caesarea 1213-1229: 409, 609; wife of, *see* Margaret of Ibelin
 Walter III, son of Erard II; count of Brienne 1189-1205: 346, 347
 Walter IV, son of Walter III; count of Brienne 1205-1250, count of Jaffa *c.* 1221-1250: 472, 473, 475, 476, 484, 552, 562-564; son of, 571, 606; wife of, *see* Mary of Lusignan
 Walter V, son of Hugh and Isabel; count of Brienne and Lecce 1296-1311, duke of Athens 1309-1311: 269, 271, 274, 762; wife of, *see* Joan (of Châtillon)
 Walter Map, English official and chronicler (d. *c.* 1208), 327 note
 Walter of Avesnes, crusader from Hainault, 389, 394, 471
 Walter of Châtillon, son-in-law of Hugh IV; count of St. Pol 1205-1219: 287, 289
 Walter of Coutances, archbishop of Rouen 1184-1207: 54, 58, 61, 79
 Walter of Florence, bishop of Acre 1208-1216: 536
 Walter of Liedekerke, Frankish captain, 264
 Walter of Montbéliard, regent of Cyprus 1205-1210 (d. *c.* 1212), 537, 605; wife of, *see* Burgundia of Lusignan
 Walter of Palear (Pagliara), chancellor of Sicily, bishop of Catania 1207-1232: 427, 436
 Walter II of Rosières, baron of Matagrifon 1259?-1276?: 258
 Walter "Pennepié", imperial governor of Jerusalem (d. 1244), 484, 552
 Waqf (Arabic, endowment), 731
 Warner "the German" (of Egisheim), co-bailie of Jerusalem 1229-1229: 460, 546
 Waverley, annals of, 402 note
 Wasîr (Arabic, vizir), 26
 Welf VI of Bavaria, duke of Spoleto (d. 1191), 10
 Welfs, German dynasty, 136, 432, 450, and *see* Henry XII (of Saxony), Henry IV (of Brunswick), Otto, Welf; *see also* Guelfs
 Wendover, *see* Roger
 Weser river, 340
 Westphalia, 330, 381
 Wied, counts of, *see* Dietrich, George
 Wierich of Daun, German knight, 238
 Wiesenbach, *see* Godfrey
 Wilbrand II, count of Hallermund 1163-1190: 92, 115
 Wilbrand of Oldenburg, German traveler, bishop of Paderborn 1225-1228, of Utrecht 1228-1234: 621, 650
 William, abbot of Cluny (*c.* 1212), 295 note
 William (Amanieu, of Genès), archbishop of Bordeaux 1207-1227: 287 note, 403
 William (of Broue), archbishop of Narbonne 1245-1257: 490 note
 William, brother of Henry I of Champagne; archbishop of Rheims 1176-1202, regent of France 1190-1191: 54, 57, 70
 William, archbishop of Tyre 1174-*c.* 1187, historian, 21, 47
 William, archdeacon of Paris, 304, 326
 William, Benedictine monk, 331
 William (of Beaumont), bishop of Angers 1202-1240: 403
 William (of Carvaillon), bishop of Cahors 1208-1234: 293
 William (Brewer), bishop of Exeter 1224-1244: 445, 542
 William (of Auvergne), bishop of Paris 1228-1248: 348
 William II, count of Chalon 1166-1203: 53
 William I, son of Florent III; count of Holland 1204-1222: 395
 William II, grandson of William I; count of

- Holland 1234-1256, king in Germany 1247-1256: 355-360
- William II, count of Joigny (d. 1255), 469
- William, son of Roger Borsa; duke of Apulia 1111-1127: 7, 10 note
- William (de Albini, III), earl of Arundel and Sussex 1196-1221: 417
- William ("Longsword"), nephew of Richard I of England; heir to earldom of Salisbury 1226-1250: 482, 483, 499
- William I, son of Roger II; king of Sicily 1154-1166: 9 note, 29-32, 136, 137
- William II, son of William I; king of Sicily 1166-1189: 32-42, 58, 59, 759; and Byzantium, 36, 37, 104, 118, 119, 137, 138, 141, 149; and the third crusade, 5, 38-41, 47; wife of, *see* Joan (Plantagenet)
- William (of Antioch), grandson of Bohemond III; lord of Botron (d. 1244), 563
- William, lord of Chantilly, 469
- William, lord of Qaşair (d. c. 1275), 578
- William III ("the Old"), marquis of Montferrat 1135-1188: 46, 164
- William IV, son of Boniface II; marquis of Montferrat 1207-1225: 206-208, 212, 214, 215, 382
- William, patriarch of Jerusalem 1262-1270: 580
- William (of Champagne), Tripolitan clerk, 478
- William (of Rochefoucauld), viscount of Châtellerauld, 50
- William de Ferrers, earl of Derby (d. 1190), 50, 51
- William de la Roche, brother of Guy I of Athens; baron of Veligosti 1256-1264?: 246
- William de la Roche, son of Guy I; duke of Athens 1280-1287, bailie of Achaea 1285-1287: 252, 259, 261, 263, 265; wife of, *see* Helena Angelina Comnena
- William II de Mandeville, earl of Essex and count of Aumale 1180-1189: 49
- William Embriaco, son of Bertrand (d. 1282), 587, 591
- William Farabel (of Le Puy), Antiochene knight, 540
- William fitz Ralph, seneschal of Normandy, 79
- William Jordan, archdeacon of Conflans, 307
- William Longchamp, bishop of Ely 1189-1197, justiciar to Richard I, 54, 79
- William "Longsword", son of William III of Montferrat; count of Jaffa and Ascalon 1176-1177: 164; wife of, *see* Sibyl (of Jerusalem)
- William of Beaujeu, master of the Temple 1273-1291: 585, 587, 588, 590-592, 594, 595, 597, 655; secretary of, 598 note
- William I of Champlitte, son of Odo; viscount of Dijon, prince of Achaea 1205-1209: 237, 239, 760
- William (of Le Puiset, vicegerent) of Chartres, master of the Temple 1210-1219: 383, 389, 397, 537, 609
- William of Châteauneuf, master of the Hospital 1243-1258: 561-563
- William of Fors (or "of Oléron"), Poitevin lord, 56, 58
- William of Gibelet (Jubail), second cousin of Guy I Embriaco; crusaders (d. before 1243), 426
- William of Les Barres, Poitevin knight, 60, 61, 74
- William of Nangis, French historian (d. 1300), 369
- William of Posquères, merchant at Marseilles, 339
- William of Puylaurens, notary to bishops of Toulouse, chronicler (d. after 1272), 277 note, 310, 313, 317 note, 320, 321
- William of Rubrouck, Dominican missionary (d. 1270), 722
- William of Sonnac, master of the Temple 1247-1250: 614
- William of Tudela, Spanish chronicler (d. after 1213), 277 note, 285, 286, 292, 293, 300 note
- William I (dalle Carceri) of Verona, hexarch, then triarch of central Euboea 1216-1263, titular king of Thessalonica 1243-1263: 245
- William II (dalle Carceri) of Verona, son of William I; triarch of central Euboea 1263-1275: 256, 257
- William II of Villehardouin, son of Geoffrey I: 240; prince of Achaea 1246-1278: 226-228, 243-249, 252-259, 261, 262, 272-274, 761, 762; wives of, 244, *and see* Carintana dalle Carceri, Anna Angelina Comnena
- William Porcus, Genoese admiral, 336-339
- William I Sanudo, son of Marco II; duke of the Archipelago 1303-1323: 271, 272
- William the Breton, French chronicler (d. 1226), 380
- Winchester, bishop of, 445, 542
- Wittelsbach, *see* Conrad
- Wolfger (of Ellenbrechtskirchen), bishop of Passau 1191-1204 (d. 1218), 120
- Wöltingerode, count of, *see* Burkhard
- Worms, 119, 444
- Würzburg: bishop of, 90-93, 105, 115; diet at (1196), 119
- Yaghī-Basan, Nizām-ad-Dīn, son of Gümüşhtigin Ghāzī; Dānishmendid emir at Sebastia 1140-1164: 677, 678
- Yahyā, son of al-'Azīz; Ḥammādid emir at Bougie 1121-1152: 22
- Yahyā, son of Tamīm; Zīrid emir at Mahdia 1108-1116: 18-20
- Ya'qūb, Selchūkid general (d. 1154), 639
- Yasak (Turkish, law), 716
- Yāzūr, 77

- Ye-liu Ta-shi, Gur-Khan of the Kara-Kitai (d. 1142), prototype of "Prester John", 669
- Yellow Sea, 508
- Yemen, 449, 693 note, 708; rulers of, *see* Aiyūbids (1174-1229)
- Yolanda, daughter of Baldwin V of Hainault; 2nd wife of Latin emperor Peter 1193-1219, empress of Romania 1217-1219: 212-214
- Yolanda of Courtenay, daughter of Latin emperor Peter and Yolanda; 2nd wife of Andrew II of Hungary 1215-1233: 213
- Yolanda of Montferrat ("Irene"), granddaughter of Boniface III; 2nd wife of Andronicus II Palaeologus 1285-1316: 266
- York, archbishops of, 79, 483
- Yorkshire, 46
- Yūnus Emre, Turkish poet (d. after 1300), 732
- Yūsuf, governor of Gabes (d. 1147), 24
- Yūsuf, son of 'Abd-al-Mu'min; Muwahḥid caliph 1163-1184: 32
- Zaccaria, Benedict, Genoese admiral, 591, 592
- Zagros mountains, 663, 668
- az-Zāhir Ghāzī, Ghiyāth-ad-Dīn, son of Saladin; Aiyūbid governor of Aleppo 1186-1193, ruler 1193-1216: 526, 528, 533, 534, 536, 537, 540, 649, 683, 693-698; wife of, *see* Ḍaifah Khātūn
- Zante, 239; count of, 265, 272
- Zara, 168, 172-176, 180, 289, 387, 760
- Zaraca, 252
- Zaratovo, bishop of, 252
- Zawila, 26, 31; archbishop (?) of, 31
- Zeitounion, 259, 271
- Zeitz, bishops of, 120, 389
- Zengi, Imād-ad-Dīn, Turkish ruler in Mosul and Syria 1127-1146: 11, 133, 134, 662
- Zengids, Turkish dynasty at Aleppo 1128-1183 and Mosul 1127-1234: 662, 674, 694-696, 700, 759, *and see* Zengi 1127-1146, Nūr-ad-Dīn Maḥmūd 1146-1174, 'Izz-ad-Dīn Mas'ūd 1180-1193, 'Imād-ad-Dīn Zengi II
- Zeno, *see* Marino, Renier
- Zeta, 127, 131
- Zirī, Berber chieftain (d. 972?), 17
- Zirids, Berber dynasty in Tunisia 972-1148: 17-20, 23-25, 27 note, *and see* Zirī, al-Mu'izz 1016-1062, Tamīm 1062-1108, Yaḥyâ 1108-1116, 'Alī 1116-1121, al-Ḥasan 1121-1148
- Zir'in, 574